

PRIMARY LESSONS  
IN  
SWATOW GRAMMAR

[COLLOQUIAL]

BY

REV. WILLIAM ASHMORE D. D.

---

ENGLISH PRESBYTERIAN MISSION PRESS.

SWATOW.

1884.



## PREFACE.

The Grammatical Notes which here appear under the name of Primary Lessons, were gathered some years ago, but the writer did not deem them of sufficient value to seek their publication. A few months ago, through the favor of Rev. William Duffus, then having charge of the small but efficient press established by the English Presbyterian Mission, such an opportunity presented itself to have the Notes printed, that a desire was stimulated to see if they could be made helpful to beginners.

But now the writer was not yet recovered from a long attack of ophthalmia, and could not use his eyes to make the final preparation. In this emergency he was glad to avail himself of the generous offer of assistance from Miss Norwood. She transcribed the entire manuscript, and superintended its passage through the press. It is due to her, therefore, and to the indulgence of those in charge of the Presbyterian Mission Press that the book now appears. When occasional help was needed in proof reading, it was most kindly rendered by Mr. Duffus, Mr. Gibson, Mr. Partridge, and Mr. Ashmore, Jr. The improved list of "Sounds of the Letters" was prepared by Mr. Ashmore, Jr., and the Syllabary at the end, by Mr. Partridge.

To those who may pass judgment on the nature of the work, the writer has to ask that the design of the little book be kept in view. It is not intended as a setting forth of the usages and principles of Chinese grammar in general, but of the Swatow dialect only. Furthermore, it is an elementary work designed for beginners. If it shall help any of them to tide over some of the difficulties which meet them at the outset, until they shall be able to prepare more elaborate notes for themselves, the writer will be repaid for his labor, and will achieve all he dares hope for.

W. A.

*Swatow, June, 1884.*

## EXPLANATIONS AND ERRATA.

In making translations of the Chinese sentences a uniform rule has not been adhered to. In some cases literal renderings are given. In others when the Chinese construction is readily apprehended, ordinary idiomatic English equivalents are preferred. To have given both literal and idiomatic English equivalents to the same Chinese sentence would have taken too much space.

The lists of Chinese equivalents for English Prepositions, Adverbs, and Interjections are meagre, but the pupil can largely add to the number by looking under the proper words in Mr. Duffus' Vocabulary.

It is to be regretted that so many *errata* are to be found. In addition to those that follow are some minor ones, some of which could not be avoided. Thus, under "Interjections" there is a deficiency of exclamation points, owing to incompleteness in the font. Some others are found in connection with the use of capitals, and hyphen and punctuation marks. Lesson xx does not appear under its own proper designation. Through some oversight, it was incorporated in Lesson xix. Blemishes of this kind may be pardoned when it is stated that, owing to absences in the country of proof readers, the final proof, in a few instances, was not seen at all before the sheets were struck off; and, that the two young Chinese compositors who set up the type do not know a word of English. They follow copy without knowing what it means. That they do their work so creditably is owing to the pains taken to train them by Mr. Duffus and Mr. Gibson.

Page	2 line	21	for	characters read	characters.
"	"	41	"	but	But.
"	7	4&5	"	hùe	húe.
"	"	7	"	that	this.
"	9	22	"	hùà*	hàu*.
"	10	11,12,13,32,34,&35	"	tí	tí.
"	16	26	"	Gô	Gôu.
"	17	18	"	hó	hò.
"	"	27	"	ngô	ngôn.
"	20	39	"	tô	kô.
"	21	26	"	khù	khù.
"	24	21	omit	have.	
"	41	33	for	sin	sim.
"	42	11	"	thăng	thàng.
"	46	4	" pigs and dogs	"	thieves.
"	59	15	omit or.		
"	"	20	for	nâng	mâng.

# ERRATA.

Page 60 line	30	for	chōi"	"	chōi.
" 73 "	36	"	rubbed on him	"	rubbed on by him.
" 76 "	1	"	kū	"	kū.
" 95 "	29	"	aganin	"	again.
" 114 "	2	"	ided	read	idea.
" 115 "	32	"	á	"	à.
" 117 "	5	"	lêng	"	lêng.
" 119 "	25	"	jien	"	jiên.
" 120 "	25	"	Gospee	"	Gospel.
" 121 "	29	"	uá	"	ũ.
" 127 for	Cháu	read	chau.		
" 131 "	chhiê	"	chhiê.		
" " "	framents	"	fragments.		
" " "	j gū, aed	"	gū, jade.		
" 133 "	Hie"	"	Hie.		
" 137 under	kiê insert	Kie",	ginger.	kiê",	better.
" 141 for,	Liap,	a of small round classifier	objects.		
"	read,	Liáp,	a classifier of small round	objects.	
" 141 for,	compainon	read	companion.		
" 142 "	lô	"	lô.		
" " "	lò	"	lô.		
" 143 "	Mak	"	Mak.		
" " under	miã",	a name,	insert miã",	life.	
" 144 for	Nau"	read	Náu".		
" 149 under	Sie,	insert sié,	small.		
" 154 for	Thian	read	Thiau.		
" " "	thián	"	thiáu.		
" 155 "	theives	"	thieves.		



# CONTENTS.

Introduction.	—	Page	1
Grammar.	...	"	1
LESSON	I.	Pronouns.	5
"	II.	Short Sentences.	6
"	III.	Short Sentences.	7
"	IV.	Declension of Pronouns.	8
"	V.	Sentences.	9
"	VI.	Other Pronominal Words.	10
"	VII.	Substantive Verb.	11
"	VIII.	Possessive Verb.	13
"	IX.	Interrogatives.	15
"	X.	Time.	18
"	XI.	Place, Direction, &c.	20
"	XII.	Quantity.	23
"	XIII.	The Article.	25
"	XIV.	Prepositions and equivalents.	27
"	XV.	Conjunctions.	29
"	XVI.	Adverbs.	31
"	XVII.	Interjections.	33
"	XVIII.	Adjectives.	36
"	XIX.	Resemblance.	46
"	XX.	Difference.	47
"	XXI.	Nouns.	50
"	XXII.	Gender.	56
"	XXIII.	Number.	59
"	XXIV.	Verbs.	51
"	XXV.	Conjugational Equivalents of Phah, <i>to strike</i> .	67
"	XXVI.	Examples in the Active Voice.	72
"	XXVII.	Various Passive Forms.	73
"	XXVIII.	Mood Equivalents.	75
"	XXIX.	Tense Equivalents.	82
"	XXX.	Some Usages of Syntax.	88
"	XXXI.	Growth of Sentences.	91
"	XXXII.	Bits of Description.	98
"	XXXIII.	Abbreviations.	102
"	XXXIV.	Slang.	104
"	XXXV.	Various Questions.	107
"	XXXVI.	Words used in Teaching and Arguing.	111
List of syllables representing the sounds used in pronouncing the Tie Chiu dialect.	...	"	125





## INTRODUCTION.

### Sounds of the Letters.

a	as in <i>palm</i> ,	e.g. pá, <i>full</i> .
e	" " <i>met</i> ,	" mé, <i>quick</i> .
i	" " <i>machine</i> ,	" sîn, <i>god</i> .
o	not final or followed by <i>h</i> as in <i>no</i> ,	" mông, <i>touch</i> .
o	final or followed by <i>h</i> as in <i>born</i> ,	" bó, <i>mother</i> .
u	like <i>oo</i> in <i>boon</i> ,	" bân, <i>literary</i> .
u	nearly as in <i>turn</i> , or more exactly as <i>eu</i> in French <i>heure</i> ,	" tû, <i>pig</i> .
ai	as in <i>aisle</i> ,	" lâi, <i>come</i> .
au	like <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i> ,	" lău, <i>old</i> .
oa	as in <i>boa</i> ,	" tōa, <i>large</i> .
oi	" " <i>going</i> ,	" ôi, <i>able</i> .
ou	like <i>o</i> in <i>no</i> ,	" lôu, <i>road</i> .
ua	as in <i>dual</i> , but with second part more distinct,	" múa, <i>full</i> .
uai	like <i>ui</i> in <i>quire</i> , " " " "	" kùai, <i>strange</i> .
ue	as in <i>fluent</i> , " " " "	" bûe, <i>not yet</i> .
ui	" " <i>fluid</i> , " " " "	" múi, <i>handsome</i> .
ch	nearly as in <i>chin</i> , but with less aspiration,	" chin, <i>truth</i> .
chh	with strong aspiration,	" chhin, <i>relatives</i> .
g	as in <i>go</i> ,	" gōu, <i>hinder</i> .
h	initial as in <i>hand</i> ,	" hân, <i>limit</i> .
h	final marks an explosive sound in certain words all of which are in the jlp tones,	" pōh, <i>thin</i> .
j	nearly as in <i>June</i> ,	" jûn, <i>tough</i> .
k	" " " <i>keep</i> , but without aspiration	" kíp, <i>concerning</i> .
kh	with strong aspiration,	" khéng, <i>willing</i> .
l	as in <i>lamb</i> ,	" lâm, <i>south</i> .
m	" " <i>man</i> ,	" măn, <i>slow</i> .
n	" " <i>no</i> ,	" nōu, <i>child</i> .
p	nearly as in <i>pang</i> , but without aspiration,	" pâng, <i>room</i> .
ph	with strong aspiration,	" phâng, <i>sail</i> .
s	as in <i>sun</i> ,	" sūn, <i>obey</i> .
t	nearly as in <i>tan</i> , but without aspiration,	" tán, <i>wait</i> .
th	with strong aspiration,	" thàn, <i>earn</i> .
ʼ	represents a strongly marked nasal,	" kiá, <i>child</i> .

Special attention is called to the sounds represented by *ü, j, çh, chh, k, kh, ph, t, and th* which have no exact equivalents in English. The *k, p, and t*, should be pronounced without even the slight aspiration to be detected in English. The exact sounds must be learned from a good teacher. Of the vowels it may be said in general, that their *quantity* is longer than that of vowels in English words.

### The Tones.

The tones are all-important. The proper use of them is indispensable in order to be understood. They can be learned correctly from the living teacher only.

Originally there were but four tones, known as,

*Phê'-sia'*, *even tone.*

*Siāng-sia'*, *rising tone.*

*Khû-sia'*, *departing tone.*

*Jîp-sia'*, *entering tone.*

In the course of time, modifications were introduced, and four more tones came to be added, making eight in all,—the number now used.

*Chiē'-phê'*, *upper even.*

*Ē - phê'*, *lower even.*

*Chiē'-siāng*, *upper rising.*

*Ē-siāng*, *lower rising.*

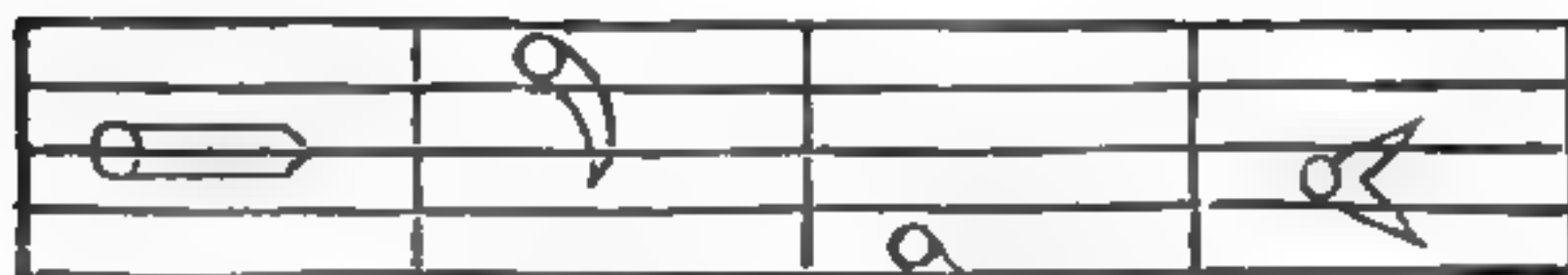
*Chiē'-khû*, *upper departing.*

*Ē-khû*, *lower departing.*

*Chiē'-jîp*, *upper entering.*

*Ē - jîp*, *lower entering.*

These are illustrated in the diagram on the next page. At the corners of the small squares are indicated the Chinese mode of marking tones. Within the square is given a sample Chinese character to aid the learner when asking the teacher the tone of any particular word or character. Below the squares are the names of the Chinese tones above represented, and the marks by which they are indicated in this book. These are the same as those used in Mr. Duffus' Vocabulary. The nomenclature is similar to that used in Miss Fielde's Dictionary.



天

子

去

出

'thien.  
heaven.  
chiē'-phō'.  
or—

sī.  
chhā.  
kū.  
kō.  
sū.  
sū.  
thī.

chŭ.  
child.  
chiē'-siāng.  
siāng-sia'.

sī.  
chhā.  
kū.  
kō.  
sū.  
sū.  
thī.

khŭ.  
go.  
chie'-khŭ.

sī.  
chhā.  
kū.  
kō.  
sū.  
sū.  
thī.

chhut.  
go out.  
chiē'-jīp.

sīh.  
chhah.  
kūh.  
kōh.  
(suh)  
(suh)  
thih.



人

父

地

入

nāng.  
man.  
ē-phō'.  
or—

sī.  
chhā.  
(kū)  
kō.  
sū.  
sū.  
thī.

pē.  
father.  
ē-siāng.  
ē-khŭ.

sī.  
(chhā)  
kū.  
kō.  
sū.  
sū.  
thī.

tī.  
earth.  
ē-khŭ.  
khŭ-sia'.

sī.  
(chhā)  
kū.  
(kō)  
(sū)  
sū.  
(thī)

jīp.  
enter.  
ē-jīp.

sīh.  
chhāh.  
(kūh)  
(kōh)  
(suh)  
(suh)  
(thih)

The tones thus indicated are known as the tones proper, or tones which words have when spoken entirely alone. When words are used in connection with other words the tones of some of them are modified or completely changed. This is done for the sake of emphasis, easy utterance, or general euphony. A list of words illustrating the changes which tones undergo in combination will be found in the Introduction to Miss Fielde's Dictionary, to which the learner is referred.

The number of syllables used in *all* the tones is comparatively few. Some are used in three, or four, or half a dozen only, and others, from the nature of their final letter, are used in two only, all of which is so much better for the learner.

A syllable having its own proper tone may also be spoken with or without an aspirate, with or without a nasal, or with one or both combined, thus having a tone, a nasal, and an aspirate. The addition of a nasal, or an aspirate, or both, indicates an entirely different word, represented by an entirely different Chinese character, thus:—

Ki	—	khi	—	ki"	—	khi".
Ta	—	tha	—	ta"	—	tha".
Ke	—	khe	—	ke"	—	khe".
Cha	—	chha	—	cha"	—	chha".
Chi	—	chhi	—	chi"	—	chhi".

### Vowel Quantity.

In connection with the tones, attention must be given to the quantity of sound in the vowels. Not only must the word have the right pitch, but it must also have due quantity. There is a tendency in the foreign learner to lose sight of this. Consequently his tones are clipped or huddled together in utterance. This is a grave defect and increases the difficulty of being easily understood. In illustrating what is now to be said about vowel quantity I shall use the spelling of Goddard's Vocabulary, which is well fitted for the purpose, omitting the tonal marks as not necessary to the illustration in hand, thus:—

A Tiam, spoken incorrectly as if it were A Tem.

Tiang,	"	"	"	"	"	"	tang.
Siang,	"	"	"	"	"	"	sang.
Chiau,	"	"	"	"	"	"	chau.
Chiu,	"	"	"	"	"	"	chu.
Chiak,	"	"	"	"	"	"	chak.

Jiak,	spoken incorrectly as	if it were	jak.
Hiang,	"	"	hang.
Hiet,	"	"	het.
Iong,	"	"	yong.
I—u,	"	"	you.
Io,	"	"	yo.
Jio,	"	"	jo.
Niam,	"	"	nem.
Siu,	"	"	Su.
Tien,	"	"	ten.

Now it is true that in certain words the Chinese themselves do make two sounds coalesce, as hiên or hîn, chiang or chang, kiên or kî, chiû or chû. If the foreigner could limit himself to the Chinese usage it would be all well enough, but he makes sounds to coalesce which Chinese do not, and the peculiarity is instantly noticed.

The prevention of this defect is easy and simple. The learner should at the outset, among other things, take short lessons daily in the pronunciation of syllables. At such lessons the attention should be given to that one thing, regardless for the time, of either the shape or the meaning of the character. The object, at such times, should be to drill the ear to a quick apprehension, and the tongue to a correct utterance of the tones. Only it is required that the tones should be marked for the benefit of the eye, and for this reason, Mr. Goddard's Vocabulary or Miss Fielde's Dictionary would be specially serviceable. Let the teacher pronounce the syllables very slowly, one at a time in what the Chinese call *khan-tâg-sia*, a *long drawn voice*. When this is done the learner will discover how the sounds of different vowels in the same syllable are separated so as to make it practically a dis-syllable. It will be noticed further how the sound of the middle vowel more especially, is prolonged in quantity. In giving a lesson the teacher may exaggerate this a little, and the pupil will need to follow him. But when he comes to speak in ordinary conversation he will not be at all likely to drawl too much, while he will escape the huddling objected to. Some examples are given in illustration. The vowel is repeated to indicate the prolongation.

Bai,	prolonged thus	—	bai-i.
Bi,	"	"	bi-i.
Bie,	"	"	bi-i-e.
Bu,	"	"	bu-u.
Bua,	"	"	bu-u-a.
Buan,	"	"	bu-u-an.

Bue,	prolonged	thus	—	bu-u-e.
Chia,	"	"		chi-i-a.
Chiu,	"	"		chi-i-u.
Chiang,	"	"		chi-i-ang.
Chhim,	"	"		chhi-i-m.
Ge,	"	"		ge-e-e.
Goi,	"	"		go-o-i.
Hiam,	"	"		hi-i-am.
Hong,	"	"		ho-o-ng.
Hue <sup>a</sup> ,	"	"		hu-u-e <sup>a</sup> .
Hui <sup>a</sup> ,	"	"		hu-u-i <sup>a</sup> .
Iu,	"	"		i-i-u.
Iu <sup>a</sup> ,	"	"		i <sup>a</sup> -i <sup>a</sup> -u <sup>a</sup> .
Kha,	"	"		kh-a-a.
Ka <sup>a</sup> ,	"	"		ka <sup>a</sup> -a <sup>a</sup> .
Kau,	"	"		kau-au-au.
Khiong,	"	"		khi-o-ong.
Kun,	"	"		ku-u-n.
Liam,	"	"		li-i-a-m.
Ngio,	"	"		ngi-i-o.

### Variations in Pronunciation.

In the Tie-chiu dialect numerous variations are found to exist in pronunciation. Many of these are local and cannot be mentioned in detail. One class, however, prevails so extensively as to demand attention. The dialect as spoken at the Hu city and Thêng-hái is considered the more correct, and teachers from those regions are to be sought for and preferred. But in the large District across the Bay from Swatow known as Tiê-iê<sup>a</sup>, or Tiô-iô<sup>a</sup> as spoken by the people themselves, the divergencies of pronunciation are so marked that sometimes the first half dozen words used by a speaker will indicate to which side of the Bay he belongs.

Some of these variations are as follows :—

*e* is changed into *au*.

biē, a temple,	is spoken as if it were	biāu.
kie, a sedan chair,	" " "	kiāu.
chie, to beckon,	" " "	chiau.
chhiē <sup>a</sup> , a wall,	" " "	chhiāu <sup>a</sup> .
hie <sup>a</sup> , a village,	" " "	hiāu <sup>a</sup> .

## INTRODUCTION.

VII

y is changed into a sound like oo.

chô, potatoes,	is spoken as if it were	chôo.
hô, fish,	" " " "	hôo.
khô, to go,	" " " "	khôo, or khâ.
hû, to accede,	" " " "	hóo.
sû, business,	" " " "	sôo.

oi is changed into ai.

hôi, to pay,	is spoken as if it were	hâi.
ôi, leisure,	" " " "	âi.
koi, classifier of houses,	" " " "	hai.
soi, before,	" " " "	sai.

ou or au is changed into ow.

jiâu, to drive,	is spoken as if it were	jiôw.
miáu, obscure,	" " " "	miôw.
ngiau, a cat,	" " " "	ngiow.
nôu, a child,	" " " "	nôw.

In certain words i is inserted before o.

jók, to disgrace,	is spoken as if it were	jiók.
tong, the middle,	" " " "	tióng.
sók, custom,	" " " "	siók.

y is changed into i.

kun, a pound,	is spoken as if it were	kin.
ngun, silver,	" " " "	ngin.
hün, hatred,	" " " "	hín.

a or io is changed into e or we.

iông, splendor,	is spoken as if it were	wéng.
kuang, light,	" " " "	kweng.
khuang, to subvert,	" " " "	khweng.

u is changed into wa.

hun-hù, to enjoin, is spoken as if it were hwan-hù.



## Interchangeable Consonants.

Certain consonants in certain words are often interchanged, some Chinese using the one and some the other without appearing to notice the difference. Thus:—

*l and n—initial.*

lâm-pôi", or, nâm-pôi", *south side.*  
lâm-núg, or, nâm-núg, *male and female.*

*b and m—initial.*

chèk-buân, or, chèk-muân, *ten thousand.*  
kiâ"-búa, or, kiâ"-múa, *step near.*

*t and k—final.*

tát-chí", or, ták-chí", *worth money.*  
sat-khang, or, sak-khang, *stop up a hole.*

*ch and ts—initial.*

ta"-chúi, or, ta"-tsúi, *to carry water.*  
lòh-chún, or, lòh-tsún, *to go into the boat.*

*g—final.*

At the Hu City many words have *g final* which is often dropped elsewhere:—

In our Western languages it is found helpful to the memory of pupils learning to spell, to group together words having the same number of syllables and the same accentuation. The suggestion is made whether pupils in Chinese may not derive some help from grouping together double words, one or both of which have the same tone. A few examples are here presented, simply by way of illustration:—

phín-khiông, *poor.*  
khí-khiú, *to pray.*  
chhài-chhêng, *talents.*  
chhai-gí, *doubt.*  
hêng-iông, *appearance.*  
thiú-thú, *to procrastinate.*

chai-iang, *calamities.*  
lú-tun, *stupid.*  
eng-kai, *ought.*  
hí'-kau, *ear-ring.*  
phêng-an, *peace.*  
hín-kim, *now.*



thiau-bú, to dance.  
bún-ngiá, elegant.  
hong-hiám, dangerous.  
hua<sup>2</sup>-bí, delight.  
khùang-iá, desert.  
khí-khá, dexterity.

húi-păng, to slander.  
miáu-sí, to despise.  
tong-hôu, just.  
kò-sông, to prosecute.  
ua<sup>2</sup>-chê, quiet.  
heng-uăng, to prosper.

hêng-huát, punish.  
hâng-hók, submit.  
iú-hók, to tempt.  
chhut-lát, diligent.  
tít-tít, direct.  
hun-piét, to discriminate.

lău-tôa, old.  
âu-biâu, profound.  
iu-bún, sorrow.  
tà<sup>2</sup>-ûc, to speak.  
kong-sū, public business.  
pô<sup>2</sup>-ie<sup>2</sup>, the same.

hek-àm, darkness.  
chhim-âu, deep.  
chha-chhò, error.  
hông-hièn, to offer up.  
hok-khì, blessedness.  
heh-thò, to deter by threats.

khin-hut, to despise.  
chũe-ak, wickedness.  
ài-sich, love.  
chai-sek, knowledge.  
châu-chak, to make.  
huáng-hok, to enjoy prosperity.

im, a tone; the tone of a word.

chià<sup>2</sup>-im, the book or mandarin tone.

thóu-im; pèh-im, the local tone.

páng-im, its own proper tone which a word has when spoken alone.

pièn-im; lièn-im, the changed tone which a word has when used in combination. Thus, in the Chinese word for wickedness, ak is the book pronunciation, ak is the thóu-im, or, the local pronunciation. Ak (upper entering) is its own proper tone. Ak (lower entering) is the changed tone used in combination. e.g. ak-nàng, a bad man.

gú; im-gú, brogue; localisms in pronunciations or words.

i ũ lân-ló gú, he has somewhat of a brogue.

Tiê-iê<sup>2</sup>-gú, Tie-ie pronunciation.

phĩ<sup>2</sup>-im, nasal tone, as in pĩ<sup>2</sup>, ti<sup>2</sup>, suã<sup>2</sup>.

u-im; hoh-im, aspirated tone, as in thàn, thũ, chíh. There are some other distinctions in tone, a knowledge of which is not essential, but which are mentioned because they may be useful to the pupil in trying the better to understand his teacher.

tôn-im, labials, as in, bô, pí, pá.

khĩ-im, dentals, as in si, chí, hí.

kauh-chih-im, linguals made by bending the tongue, as in lo, la, lu.

that chh im, *linguals made by a thrust of the tongue, as in tek,*  
tat, tak

âu-im, *gutterals, as in, hok, ek, ok.*

háp-kháu-im, *tones made by shutting the mouth, as, m̄, kim, sim.*

chí-kâi-im, *this tone.*

chhiá"-tâ"-mân se-su, *please speak more slowly a little.*

lú si tâ"-khah-mé, uá thia"-m̄-hîn, *you speak too fast, I do not hear*  
*clearly*

chí-kâi-im tùi a-m̄ tùi? *is this tone right or not?*

chhiá"-tâ"-tâng se-su, *please speak it a little more heavily.*

chhiá"-tâ"-khin se-su, *please speak it a little more lightly.*

chí-kât-jī sī-mih-im? *what is the tone of this word?*

chí-kâi-im sī-iâm a-sī-iâm? *is the tone of this word iâm or iám?*

im—hó-khan-tâng se-su, *the tone—draw it out a little.*

chhiá"-hó thak-chò tháu-im, *please read in colloquial tone.*







**PRIMARY LESSONS**  
IN  
**SWATOW GRAMMAR.**  
[COLLOQUIAL.]

---

**Grammar.**

The Chinese word for Grammar is Bân Huap, *Literary Method*, meaning, thereby, the usages which regulate the construction of sentences. This, and the few other grammatical terms the Chinese possess, such as, sít-jī, *substantive characters*, uáh-jī, *living characters*, &c, have reference, properly, to written style, but, in the absence of other expressions, are pressed into colloquial service.

**Parts of Speech.**

There is no such minute classification as exists in Western languages. Consequently, a specific nomenclature for parts of speech is not to be found. The inflection by terminal endings of nouns verbs, and adjectives is unknown. One and the same simple form of the word is used unchanged in all the various moods, tenses, and degrees of comparison. These variations of meaning which in Western languages are expressed by declension and conjugation, are obtained in Chinese by the aid of auxiliaries. Auxiliaries and particles form a most numerous family, characterized by remarkable flexibility and versatility. They turn up on all occasions, and are equally at home with nouns, pronouns, verbs, and adjectives. The mastery of their manifold adaptations must constitute a large part of the study of Chinese grammar.

Words are divided into two general classes which are called sít-jī, *True or Substantive words*, and Hù-jī, *Empty words*.

In explaining the difference between these two classes, the Chinese say, *ū muēh kiā' hó-thóí' — jī sī-sít*, *if there is anything discernible — then the word is sít*, i. e. *true, veritable, actual, tangible, substantial*; *bô-muēh-kiā' hó-thóí' — jī sī-hū*, *if there is nothing discernible — the word is hū*, i. e. *empty, insubstantial*. The *sít-jī*, then, comprise all the nouns, — names of persons, places, and things, — and some teachers would also include some verbs in this class. The *hū-jī*, comprise all auxiliaries, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions interjections, and all words which represent nothing tangible in themselves, but serve to develop the meaning of other words, and show their relations to each other. Thus, the Chinese words for mountain, earth, heaven, river, road, wood, animal, bird, door, village, are all *sít*; whereas, the Chinese words for dark, consider, useless, wherefore, hate, love, desire, in, out, upon, are all *hū*.

In each of the following pairs of words, the first one is *sít*, and the second one is *hū* *Sua'-téng*, *the mountain upon*; *chhù-ě*, *the house under*; *hái-tóí*, *the sea at the bottom*; *thi' chiē'*, *heaven above*; *tóu thiā'*, *the stomach aches*; *sim siē'*, *the mind thinks*; *kha chéng*, *the foot is swollen*; *nâng gút*, *the man is asleep*; *jít-chhut*, *the sun rises*; *hōu-lōh*, *rain falls*.

There is still another classification into *Uáh-jī*, *living characters*, *Sí-jī*, *dead characters*.

This distinction seems to correspond very nearly to our own distinction between verbs and nouns. In explaining it, the Chinese say, *ōi-siē'*, *ōi-chò-sū — jī — kiē-chò-uáh*, *if it can think, or can do anything, — then the word is uáh, living*. *Bōi-siē'*, *bōi-chò-sū — jī — sí-sí*, *if it cannot think, or bring some thing to pass — then the word is sí, dead*. At first sight this appears sufficiently explicit. But when we come to apply the principle, we find that the distinction does not always hold. It changes its scope and seems to denote such a difference as exists between activity and passivity, — between energy in exercise or about to be exercised, and energy expended.

For example, the word *nâng*, *a man*, is a *sít — jī* — a noun, but then it is also *uáh, living*, because it possesses inherent force and activity. *Chiá'-chō*, *please be seated*, is *uáh*, because it involves an action, but *chō-háu*, *seated*, is *sí*, because the action has ceased. *M-ōi'-chō*, *I have not leisure to sit*, is *uáh* because it is attended with action, but, *uá chiā'-chō*, *I will still remain seated* is *sí* because action is declined. *Húe sie-chhù*, *the fire burns the house*, is *uáh* because there is energy exhibited. But

chhù sie-tiāu--liáu, *the house is burned*, is sí because the energy has ceased. Hū háh-jieh-choi? *how many fish did you catch?* is uáh, but liáh-bô-hū, *caught no fish*, is sí.

It is common to hear scholars speak of a sí word being used as an uáh word, and of an uáh word being used as a sí word. It is obvious that something more may be intended by this than simply that nouns are used as verbs, and verbs as nouns. It evidently includes personification and the figurative use of language.

In the following examples, as the Chinese say, sí-jī chò-uáh-jī ēng, *dead words are used as live ones*. In each example following, the first Chinese word, or the first two or three words before the dash—are sí, as, sí-nâng—à-kàu-khiā, *a dead man argues till he starts erect*. The words, sí-nâng, are sí, for, says the scholar triumphantly, "How can a dead man argue at all? It is not real; he is only supposed to do so." That is, it is figurative. Bô-kha-nâng—háh-tiéh, *caught by a no-footed man*. The three words, bô-kha-nâng, are sí for how can a no-footed man catch any body? Chhe-mê-nâng thóí-kì, *a blind man seeing!* How can a blind man see? He is only supposed to; it is figurative. Sua—ôi-kiè, kok—ôi-lín, *the mountain can call, the valley can answer*. Sua and kok are sí words, spoken of as if animate. Hái—ôi-chhiè, *the sea can laugh*. Guéh—ôi-khui-keng, *the moon can draw a bow*. San-hū chhiu—ôi-khui-hue, *coral can blossom*. The words hái, guéh, and San-hū-chhiu, are all sí. What they do is done figuratively.

In the following examples, uáh-jī chò-sí-jī ēng, *live words are used as dead ones*. Koi—bô-thí, *a fowl cannot crow*. Káu—bô-pūi, *a dog cannot bark*. Bé—bô-pháu, *a horse cannot run*. "Why can they not?" asks the Chinaman, "They all have the power to do it." Their inability, then, is not real but figurative. To living things are ascribed the characteristics of dead things. Sim ngē-kùe-chiéh, *the heart is harder than stone*. This is included in the same class because the hardness is not real but figurative. Ai-sueh-huap, bô-nâng-lái, *wanted to explain the method, but nobody came*. Ai-sueh huap, is uáh, but because the intended action fails of accomplishment it becomes sí. In like manner any given word may be uáh, while the action

is going on, but when the action is completed, and motion ceases, the same word then becomes sí, as *believing*—*belief*. In each of the ensuing sentences, the first two words are uáh, but the sentences have a sí-jí out come, because nothing is effected. OI-tà" — bōi-kiâ", *can say—but can't do*. OI-siē" — bōi-chò, *can think—but can't act*. Ū-lha — bōi-kiâ", *has feet—but can't walk*. Ū-chhiú — bōi-khiēh-muēh, *has hands—but can't take anything*.

### Proximate Equivalents.

From all this, it will appear that the Chinese have no such grammatical code as exists elsewhere. But they have a well established *usus loquendi* which serves them instead of a code. To conform to this in speech is to be grammatical, to vary from it is to be ungrammatical. In correcting an erroneous form of speech, a Chinese teacher does not say to his pupil, "You are violating a rule." but, "You are departing from the usage. Nobody says it that way." This is supposed to be quite enough.

In what is now to be presented the grammatical nomenclature of the West is introduced, but not with the expectation of being able always to find exact counterparts therefor. It is used for convenience in classification, and the design of the present endeavor will be met if *proximate equivalents* can be found for some of our Western grammatical forms of speech.

thóu-ūe, *local dialect*.

péh-ūe, *plain words; colloquial, as opposed to, kua"-ūe*.

lí hó-tà" péh-ūe, *you please speak the colloquial*.

lí hó-tà"-péh-ūe pun uá-thia", *please speak in colloquial, and let me hear*.

uá thia" m̄-méng, lí chàì-tà", *I don't hear clearly, say it again*.

sín-se" lí tà"-ūe mài"-khah-mé", *teacher, don't speak too fast*.

lí sueh-méng khut-uá thia", *explain it for me to hear*.

lí lêng-gūa chàì-tà", *say it over again*.



## Pronouns.

Uá, *I*.  
 lú, *you*.  
 i, *he; she; it*.  
 nín, *ye*.  
 nán; ún; uán, *we*.  
 i-téng, *they*.  
 uá-kài, *mine*.  
 lú-kài, *thine*.  
 i-kài, *his; hers; its*.  
 nán-kài; ún-kài, *ours*.  
 nín-kài, *yours*.  
 i-kài; in-kài, *theirs*.  
 uá ka-kí; uá chū-kí, *I myself*.  
 lú ka-kí, *you yourself*.  
 i ka-kí, *he himself*.  
 ún ka-kí; nán ka-kí, *we ourselves*.  
 i ka-kí; in ka-kí, *they themselves*.  
 chí; chí-kài; chíá; chíá-kài; chhū, *this*.  
 hū; hū-kài; hiá, *that*.  
 hū pát-kài, *that other one*.  
 tī-kài? *which?*  
 mih-kài? *what? which?*  
 só, *that which*.  
 chí--húe, *these*.  
 hū--húe, *those*.  
 chí-hō, *this kind*.  
 chí-iē, " "  
 hū-hō, *that kind*.  
 hū-iē, " "  
 tī-hō? *which kind?*  
 tī-iē? " "  
 pát, *another*.  
 ū-nâng, *somebody*.  
 bô-nâng, *nobody*.  
 móng-nâng, *a certain person; Mr so and so*.  
 hūam-nâng, *whosoever*.  
 hūam-tī-tiâng, "  
 tī-tiâng? *who?*  
 mih-nâng? *which man?*

### Short Sentences.

uá tở--chí, *I am here; was here; will be here.*  
 uá chồ-lồh, *I sit down; sat down; will sit down.*  
 uá chầu-khí, *I rise up; will rise up.*  
 uá khiã--khí, *I stand up; stood up; will stand up.*  
 uá khiã-tiam, *I stand still; stood still; will stand still.*  
 uá kiã"-lôu, *I walk; walked; will walk.*  
 uá chhut-mâng, *I go out of doors; went out of doors.*  
 uá jíp--khù, *I went in; &c.*  
 uá chhut--lài, *I came out.*  
 uá lòh-chôn, *I go to the boat.*  
 uá chiê"-sua", *I go ashore.*  
 uá khù-chhù, *I go home.*  
 uá khù Sùà"-thâu, *I go to Swatow.*  
 uá thia" i, *I hear him.*  
 uá chồ-kang, *I do work.*  
 uá siá-jí, *I write characters.*  
 uá thák-chy, *I read a book.*  
 uá siàu-chí", *I count cash.*  
 uá chiáh-pûg, *I eat rice.*  
 uá chiáh-chúi, *I drink water.*  
 uá chiáh-tê, *I drink tea.*  
 uá chiáh-iêh, *I take medicine.*  
 uá chhûe-muêh, *I hunt for something.*  
 uá khiêh-chheh, *I get a book.*  
 uá sie-chún, *I burn paper.*  
 uá tiám-teng, *I light the lamp.*  
 uá khí-hûe, *I light the fire.*  
 uá pû-pûg, *I boil rice,*

NOTE 1. It is seen above that in Chinese one form of the verb is used to denote past, present, or future tense. The learner will be puzzled by this at first, but in a short time will learn to discover from the context which tense is intended. There are more specific modes of indicating tense which will be treated of in a future lesson.

NOTE 2. In each of the above sentences, instead of the word uá, insert, in succession, lû you, i he, nín you, in they, uán we, and a corresponding number of additional sentences will be made.

### Short sentences.

- chí-ki-to, *this knife.*  
 hŭ-ki tē-sī, *that tea-spoon.*  
 hŭ nō-ki-pit, *those two pencils.*  
 chí-hue hó, *these are good.*  
 hŭ-hue bō-nâng-ài", *those nobody wants.*  
 chí-iē" chōi, *of this kind are many.*  
 chí-iē" chié, *of that kind are few.*  
 chí-hō-muēh oh-chhue, *this sort of thing is hard to find.*  
 chiá sī, *this is it.*  
 hiá m-sī, *that is not it.*  
 pát-hō bō, *any other kind (have) not (got).*  
 pát-iē" ũ, *(we) have other kinds.*  
 pát-muēh bō-eng, *any other kind (is) of no use.*  
 lú só-siē", *what you think.*  
 hŭ só-khiēh--kái, *the one which you brought.*  
 hŭ só-tà" kái-ue, *the words which you said.*  
 i tà", sī-i só-chai--kái, *what he says is what he knows.*  
 m-chai tī-nâng, *don't know which man.*  
 m-chai tī-sī, *don't know what time, i. e. when.*  
 m-hiáu mih-sŭ, *does not understand anything.*  
 bō-mih-sŭ, *no business whatever; no matter.*  
 put-lŭn mih-sŭ, *no matter whatsoever business.*  
 bō-mih-ôi", *no leisure whatever.*  
 mih-muēh tou-hó, *anything whatever will do.*  
 huām-nâng-lài, *whosoever comes.*  
 huām-nâng-tō, " *(is) here.*  
 huām-nâng-ài", " *wants it.*  
 huām-nâng-bói, " *buys.*  
 huām-nâng-khiēh, " *brings.*  
 huām sī-mih-nâng, *what man soever.*  
 bō-pát-nâng, *no other person.*  
 bō-tī-tiáng, *nobody.*  
 chŭ-sī kái-nâng, *a self-sufficient man.*  
 chŭ-lái-húc, *self-producing fire (matches)*  
 ka-kī chŭ-ũ--kái, *something that exists of itself, i.e. natural.*  
 bō-sī-mih pát-nâng, *no other man whatever.*  
 bō pát-mih-kái, *nothing else whatever.*

## Declension of Pronouns.

### 1ST PERSON, SINGULAR.

uá,	<i>I.</i>
uá chék-nâng,	<i>" (individually).</i>
put-chhái,	<i>" (depreciative of self).</i>
siáu-nâng,	<i>" { " " }.</i>
ngô-tí,	<i>" { " " among relatives }.</i>
siáu-tí,	<i>" { " " " " " }.</i>
lú kái-pók,	<i>" thy servant.</i>

### PLURAL.

uá-téng,	<i>we.</i>
uán,	<i>we (excludes the hearer).</i>
ún; ng,	<i>we ( " " " " ) used in Hu city.</i>
nán,	<i>we (includes the hearer).</i>
ún put-chhái--húe,	<i>we (depreciative of selves.).</i>
ún-pók-téng,	<i>we, thy servants.</i>

### 2ND PERSON, SINGULAR.

lú,	<i>you.</i>
lú thâu-ke,	<i>you, master,</i>
chun-kè, lú,	<i>you, Respected Sir.</i>
tái-jín, lú,	<i>your Excellency.</i>
lú lâu-nâng-ke,	<i>Respected Sir.</i>
lú lâu-tòa,	<i>you, venerable Sir.</i>

### PLURAL.

lú-téng; nín,	<i>you.</i>
---------------	-------------

### 3RD PERSON, SINGULAR.

i,	<i>he.</i>
i kái-nâng,	<i>he himself.</i>
i póg-nâng,	<i>his own self; his own person.</i>
i tòa-nâng,	<i>his Honor.</i>
i chék-nâng,	<i>he (individually).</i>

### PLURAL.

in,	<i>they.</i>
i kái-nâng,	<i>they themselves.</i>
i hùá-nâng,	<i>" "</i>
i hiá-nâng,	<i>" "</i>
i khùn-nâng,	<i>" "</i>
i chhoh-nâng,	<i>" i.e. that lot of people.</i>
in chu-úi,	<i>they, i.e. all those personages.</i>

## Sentences.

- ủa hua'-lĩ, *I am pleased.*  
 ủa chék-nâng hua'-hĩ, *I for one am pleased.*  
 lĩ lău-tôa chhiá'-chô, *venerable Sir, please be seated.*  
 ngò-ti m'-hiáu, *I, your stupid younger brother, do not understand.*  
 i-nâng lăi-lău, *he has come.*  
 i-nâng tở, *he is here.*  
 i-nâng chhnt-koi, *he has gone out into the street.*  
 i-nâng chiē'-chhi, *he has gone up to the market.*  
 i ã, ủa bô, *he has, I have not.*  
 in ã, nán bô, *they have, we have not.*  
 hiă, hũ-sĩ bô-tở, *I, at that moment, was not there.*  
 put-chhâi sĩ jĩ-cháp-hũc, *I, the witless one, am twenty years old.*  
 sáu-nâng bô-mêng-pôh, *I, the small one, do not understand.*  
 ủa tâng-sim tâng-l, *we are of the same heart and purpose.*  
 ủa-tóng chhiet-khiũ--lũ, *we earnestly pray you.*  
 lĩ-pók r̃-ká'-phien-lũ, *I, thy servant, do not dare deceive you.*  
 lũ-pók ài'-cháu, *I, thy servant, am going.*  
 put-chhâi--hũc sĩ kiă'-chũn-nâng, *(we), witless ones, are sailors.*  
 put-chhâi--hũc sĩ choh-chhân, *(we), witless ones, till the ground.*  
 thâu-ke, ã, sìn-sek bũe-kàu, *master, the letters have not yet arri-*  
[red.  
 thâu-ke, ã, sìn-bũn-chúa lăi, *master, the newspapers have come.*  
 i chũ-kĩ m'-hũc, *he himself does not want to.*  
 i-kũ chũ-kĩ tiă, *he regards himself only.*  
 Tăi-Jin ã bũn-chũ--lăi, *Your Excellency, the despatch has come.*  
 Tăi-Jin gék-chũn tở-thẽng--lũ, *Your Excellency, the gig is waiting*  
[for you.  
 lău-nâng-ke chiăh-tê, *venerable Sir, take tea.*  
 i-póg-nâng hán-tit-lăi, *he himself rarely comes.*  
 i-póg-nâng bô-lĩ-sũ, *he himself does not transact business.*

### Other Pronominal Words.

chí-bō-nâng, *this kind of people.*  
 chí-iē-nâng, " " "  
 hiá-pát-nâng, *that other man.*  
 chí-pát-nâng, *this other man.*  
 chiá-chèng-nâng, *all this multitude.*  
 pát-muēh, *some other thing.*  
 hiá-pát-muēh, *that other thing.*  
 pát-nâng, *another man; other men.*  
 put-lūn sī-mih-nâng, *no matter who.*  
 put-lūn sī-mih-muēh, *no matter what thing*  
 tī-sī, *when.*  
 tī-kiā-sū, *which item, what business.*  
 tī-kò, *where.*  
 chò-nī? *which? what? how?*  
 kak-nâng, *each person; each one.*  
 kúi-kāi? *how many?*  
 kúi-háp, *a few grains; how many grains?*  
 chiē-se kái-nâng, *such a man as this.*  
 mih-kái? *which one? what?*  
 pát-mih-kái, *some other one.*  
 mūe, *every.*  
 mūe-mūe, *each; every.*  
 mūe-jit, *every day.*  
 lóng-chóng, *all.*  
 háp-kái, *every one of them.*  
 háp-ke, *the whole family.*  
 chiá, *the one.*  
 tōa chiá, *the great one.*

#### SENTENCES.

kak-kak sī-hiē-se, *each one is like that.*  
 nāng-nāng sī-hiē-se, *each man is like that.*  
 tou-sī hiē-se, *all are like that.*  
 mūa-ti-kò ū-hōu, *everywhere there is rain.*  
 put-lūn sī-mih-nâng tà, *no matter what man says it.*  
 m̄-chai i tī-sī-lái, *I don't know when he comes.*  
 ia-m̄ chai i tī-sī-khū, *nor do I know when he goes.*  
 i bó chò-nī-lū, *he did not make any answer.*  
 i bó-tà chò-nī-iē, *he did not say what kind.*

## Substantive Verb.

- sī, *is ; am ; are ; yes ; denotes entity, existence.*  
 úa sī, *I am.*  
 lú sī, *you are.*  
 i sī, *he is.*  
 ún sī ; nán sī, *we are.*  
 nín sī, *you are.*  
 i téng sī ; in sī, *they are.*  
 úa m̄-sī, *I am not.*  
 lú m̄-sī, *you are not.*  
 i m̄-sī, *he is not.*  
 i sī-nâng, *he is a man.*  
 i sī-tō-chhân, *he is in the field.*  
 i sī-tōa, *he is large.*  
 i sī Tāg-nâng, *he is a Chinaman.*  
 úa sī Sai-kok-nâng, *I am a Western man.*  
 i sī hó-nâng, *he is a good man.*  
 sī úa-kái, *(it) is mine.*  
 sī-hó, " " *well.*  
 sī chiè-se, " " *so.*  
 sī hiè-se, " " *like that.*  
 sī kak-nâng kái-sū, *(it) is each one's business.*  
 sī, mé? *is (it) so?*  
 sī a-m̄-sī? *is (it) so or not?*  
 i sī chún-chú, *he is a ship captain.*  
 i sī bák-kang-nâng, " " *carpenter.*  
 i sī sai-pē, " " *master mechanic.*  
 i sī uī-seng, " " *physician.*  
 úa sī i-kái a-hia, *I am his elder brother.*  
 úa sī i-kái tī-chú, *I am his pupil.*  
 i sī tōi-it-hó kái-nâng, *he is a first rate man.*  
 sī kong-sū, *(it) is a public affair.*  
 sī sai-sū, " " *private affair.*  
 sī-kūn, " " *near.*  
 sī-hng, " " *far off.*  
 sī-kúi, " " *high.*  
 sī-kē, " " *low.*  
 sī-chhim, " " *deep.*  
 sī-chhién, " " *shallow.*  
 sī-khuah, " " *broad.*  
 sī-óih, " " *narrow.*

### Substantive Verb.

Chò is also a substantive verb of so common a use as to call for early consideration in connection with si with which it is often found in combination. Chò originally means *to make* or *to do*, then, the thing that is made or done, and hence, *to become*, *to be*, *is*, *are*, *as being*, and is sometimes expressed by *according to*.

In connection with chò as a substantive verb several other words are in constant association. Among these are sêng, *to accomplish*, and hence it means *to become*; also, pièn or pì", and

uá", *to change*.

thóí-chò-hó, *I regard it as being good.*

thóí-chò-pù-nâng, *I look upon him as being a rich man.*

chò-chhèng-nâng tà", *as everybody says.*

i ài-chò-tòa, *he wants to be great.*

i ài-chò-gâu, *he wants to be wise.*

hiáh-i chò-chhát, *treat him as being a thief.*

pí-jū-i chò-hū, *compared him to being a fish.*

sêng-chò-nâng, *to be a man.*

sêng-chò-gâu, *to become wise.*

chò-pē-nâng bôí-tit chhut-mûg, *those who are sick cannot go out*  
[of doors]

chò Sai-kok-nâng kái-phah-shg, *according to the opinions of*  
[Western people.]

chò Tâg-nâng kái-huap, *according to Chinese rule.*

chang chí-kái chò-miá, *he took this to be a name, i. e. took it*  
[for a name.]

i chò-uá kái-a-hia", *he became my brother.*

i si chò-uá kái-phêng-iú, *he is my friend.*

chò-hó-nâng, *be a good person (said to a child).*

i chò-tòa, uá chò-sòi, *he is of consequence, and I am insignifi-*  
[cant.]

kiò-i chò-sin-se", *addressed him as being a teacher, i. e. called*  
[him teacher.]

pàng chò-chèk-ē, *put them together so that they will be one lot.*

hàh-chò chèk-kái, *joined to be one.*

se" chò-nâng, tiéh-khat-khóu, *being born a man, one must bear*  
[up bravely.]

chò-lū-tà", *it is for you to speak; as you say.*



### Possessive Verb.

As the verb *sī* denotes chiefly that something exists or is, so *ū* denotes possession. It is often used interchangeably with *sī*, and is often combined with it. Thus, *i sī ū*, 'he is in possession of, or, emphatically, he has.

*Ū*, to have; to possess; to have existence, and, hence, sometimes to be; is; e.g. *tiéh ū-nâng chāu--i*, *chià" ôi-tit-ū*, there must be some one to make it, and then it will have, or possess existence.

*ū a-bô*, have you or not?

*úa ū*, I have.

*úa m̄-chêng-ū*, I have not.

*lū ū*, you have.

*i ū*, he has.

*ū-lí*, has a reason; is reasonable.

*ū-ēng*, has a use; is useful.

*ū-sū*, has business.

*ū-lói-māu*, has good breeding.

*būe-ū*, not yet has, or has had.

*būe-chêng-ū*, have not yet had.

*bū-pit-ū*, certainly has.

*m̄-chêng-ū*, I have not had.

*bô-mih-ū*, have not much.

*tiéh-ū*, certainly have, has, or must have.

*ū-sī-ū*, *ū-sī-bô*, sometimes have, and sometimes have not.

*só-ū kái muéh-kiā"*, the things which he has.

*ū-kái-hó*, *ū-kái m̄-hó*, some are good, some are bad.

*ū-kái put-piēn*, some things are not expedient.

*hōan-iáu-ū*, there are still more.

*hūam-só-ū*, all which he has.

*i-ū-ngūn*, he has money.

*lū ū phêng-an a-bô*, are you at rest or not?

*lāi--tang ū*, inside have got.

*lāi-tói ū*, " " "

*hán-ū*, seldom have.

*ū chōi-chiá*, there are more or less.

*ū ke-kái a-bô*, are there any more?

*i ū*, *úa bô*, he has I have not.

*i ū sī-mih-pē"*, what disease has he?

*chiè-i só-ū*, according to what he has.

### Possessive Verb.

Although *sī*, and *ũ* are thus necessary in certain short sentences, yet in ordinary conversation they are commonly left out, as the following examples will show.

- mī-pau sng, the bread is sour.*  
*chúi tiām, the water is sweet, i. e. fresh.*  
*chúi kiām, the water is brackish.*  
*chúi nah-sap, the water is dirty.*  
*chúi lô, the water is roily.*  
*chúi sie, the water is hot.*  
*chúi chhim, the water is deep.*  
*chúi chhién, the water is shallow.*  
*chúi kún, the water is boiling.*  
*chúi lá-lún, " " tepid.*  
*chúi chié, " " limited.*  
*chúi m̄-kàu-chok, " " not enough.*  
*chún ôih, the boat is narrow.*  
*chún tōa, " " large.*  
*chún sòi, " " small.*  
*chún phūa, " " broken.*  
*chún khiàng, " " strong.*  
*chún àu, " " rotted.*  
*chún mé, " " swift.*  
*chún mǎn, " " slow.*  
*lōu pē, the road is even.*  
*lōu khi-khu, " " uneven.*  
*lōu lok-lok, " " sloppy.*  
*thi' ou-àm, the heavens are dark.*  
*sua' kúi'-kúi', the mountain is very high.*  
*huang tōa, the wind is high.*  
*éng chhou, the waves are rough.*  
*nék jūn, the meat is tough.*  
*nék chhò, " " tender.*  
*thōu sán, the soil is sterile.*  
*thōu pūi, " " rich.*  
*l-sù hūn-hūn, the ideas are confused.*  
*muéh-kiā' jū-jū, things are disorderly.*  
*muéh-kiā' iap-thiap, things are orderly.*  
*chhā phā, the wood is brush.*  
*ke-húe lái, the tools are sharp.*

## Interrogatives.

Interrogation is denoted by *tī*, *who?* *what?* *which?* *tī-tiâng*, *who?* *whom?* *tī-kái*, *which one?* *which?* *tī-kò*, *where?* *whence?* *mih*, *which?* *mih-kái*, *which one?* *what?* *mih-nâng*, *which person?* *sī-mih*, *which?* *chò*; *chò-mī*, *how?* *why?* *châi*; *hò*, *how?* *jiéh*, *how much?* *how many?* (applied to quantity and dimensions).

The particles *mō*, *mē*, and *nē*, at the end of sentences make them interrogative; also, such words as *būe*, *bô* and *m̄* serve the same purpose.

The word *kái* so constantly used in questions is in itself a classifier, but is easily made to do the work of a demonstrative pronoun, as is true, also, of other classifiers.

*chí sī sī-mih-muéh*, *what thing is this?*

*m̄-chai sī sī-mih-muéh*, *I do not know what it is.*

*chí-kái sī chék-pau-iéh*, *this is a paper of medicine.*

*chí-kái sī bák-chúi*, *this is ink.*

*chí sī sī-mih-kái*, *what is this?*

*chí-kái sī siá-jī kái khi-kū*, *these are writing materials.*

*chí-kái sī thit-thò-muéh*, *these are curiosities.*

*chí-kái kiè-chò sī-muéh*, *what do you call this thing?*

*chiá kiè-chò sī-muéh*,

*chí-kái kiè-chò sōng-f*, *"this is called a rocking chair.*

*chí-kái kiè-chò chhoi-lí-kià*, *this is called a telescope.*

*kái sī-muéh*, *what is this?*

*kái sī chūn--ēng-kái*, *this is something used on the boat.*

*ū sī-mih í-sū*, *what's the idea?*

*m̄-chai sī-mih í-sū*, *I don't know what the idea is.*

*ō, í-sū sī chiè-se*, *O, the idea is this.*

*i-lái mih-sū*, *what business has he come on?*

*i-lái bô-mih-sū*, *he has not come on any business.*

*i-lái tà-ūe*, *he has come to speak (to somebody).*

*i-lái chhūe chhin-nâng*, *he has come to hunt a relative.*

*i-lái lí pát-nâng kái-sū*, *he has come on business for somebody*  
[else.

*i-lái bōi-muéh*, *he has come to sell something.*

*i-sī tō-chí khiá-khí a-m̄-sī*, *does he live here?*

*i-bô tō-chí khiá-khí*, *he does not live here.*

*i put-kūe sī-lái chò khang-khūe*, *he only came to do work.*

*i-sī lái-chò seng-lí*, *he has come to do business.*

## Interrogatives.

- lự bôì sī-mih-muèh? *what are you selling?*  
 uá sī bôì-tê-hiāu, *I am selling confectionery.*  
 ũ-pát-miã hó-kiè a-bô? *is there any other way of naming it?*  
 ũ-pát-miã hó-kiè, *yes, there is another way.*  
 chí sī tì-tiāng-kái? *whose is this?*  
 chí sī sin-se"--kái, *this is the teacher's.*  
 chí sī thâu-ke--kái, *this is Master's.*  
 chí sī chêng-nāng--kái, *this belongs to the public.*  
 chí sī tì-nāng-kái? *this belongs to which person?*  
 sī-sók hū-chià"-lái kái-uāng, *it belongs to the man who just*  
*[came.]*  
 kái tì-tiāng, *who is that?*  
 tì-tiāng-lái, *who comes?*  
 tì-tiāng-tô, *who is there?*  
 tì-tiāng-tà", *„ said it?*  
 tì-tiāng-khū, *„ went?*  
 tì-tiāng-hàm, *„ calls?*  
 tō tì-sī-lái, *when did he come?*  
 chá-jit lái, *came yesterday.*  
 lái-kú--liáu, *came a long time ago.*  
 mŭg-khí-chá--lái, *came this morning.*  
 lự khũa-khí tì-kò, *where do you live?*  
 khũa-khí tō Hú-siã", *live at the Hu city.*  
 khũa-khí tō-hāng, *lives in the hong.*  
 khũa-khí tō-kū"--tóng, *„ at the District city.*  
 nín tì-kò-húe, *ye are of what place?*  
 uán sī Gô-chhân--húe, *we are Go-chhan people.*  
 ún sī-hue"-ē kái, *we are from a country village-(depreciating).*  
 ún sī-lài-tì kái-nāng, *we are from the Interior.*  
 lự khū-tì-kò, *where are you going?*  
 uá khū-bôì-muèh, *I go to buy something.*  
 uá khū chò-khang-khūe, *I go to do work.*  
 uá khū-thó-chĩ", *I am going to collect cash.*  
 uá khū thó-siàu-bák, *I am going to collect an account.*  
 uá khū-táu-chĩ", *I am going to exchange (dollars) for cash.*  
 i kàu-tì-kò, *to where has he reached? How far has he gone?*  
 i kàu Phau-thái-liáu, *he has got as far as Phau-Thai.*

## Interrogatives.

tī-chiah-chûn, *which boat?*

sī-hū pha-tèng--kái, *it is that one at anchor.*

sī-hū sái-phâng--kái, *it is that one sailing.*

sī-hū-kái ũ phâng-kám--kái, *it is that one with a cover.*

sī-hū kò-chiō--kái, *it is that one rowing.*

sī-nâng the-chûn--kái, *it is the one the men are poling.*

tī-chék-kiā-sī, *which is the one?*

tī-chék-kái-sī, " " " " ?

ũi-tiéh chò-nī, *on account of what?*

sī ũi-tiéh pē-bó, *it is on account of his father and mother.*

chò-nī, nê, *why so? why is it?*

lū tà chò-nī, *what do you say?*

uá bô chò-nī-tà, *I did not say anything.*

lū chò-nī-siē, *what do you think?*

uá siē chiē-se m̄-hó-chò, *I think it is not well to do that*  
[way.]

chò-nī-iē, *what kind is it?*

chò-ū, *how can there be? (disputing).*

hō chò-nī-chò, *how can it be done?*

chāi-tit, *how can it be? (disputing).*

chāi-se, *what manner?*

i nāng chāi-se, *how is he? what sort of person is he?*

jiéh-chōi, *how many? how much?*

jiéh-kūi, *how high?*

jiéh-tōa, *how large?*

chiéh jiéh-tāng, *how heavy is the stone?*

chúi jiéh-chhim, *the water, how deep is it?*

i ũ jiéh-chōi ngā, *how much silver has he?*

jiéh-hó, *how good is it?*

hō-m̄ chiē-se, *why not have it thus?*

i lái a-būe, *has he come or not?*

ū-mē, *have they any? is there any?*

ài a-m̄, *do you want it or not?*

thâu-ke lái a-bô, *has the Master come or not?*

sī-mih sī-hāu, *what time?*

tō sī-mih sī-hāu, *at what time?*

tō tī-sī, *when?*

sī-mih ũi-chhū, *what place?*

sī-mih tī-hng, " "

## Time.

jít--kùà, *daytime.*  
 mē--kùà, *night-time.*  
 ē-kùà, *afternoon.*  
 chiē--kùà, *forenoon.*  
 ē-ngóu, *afternoon.*  
 kim-jít; kiá--jít, *to-day.*  
 cha-jít, *yesterday.*  
 chá-jít, *some previous day.*  
 chòh--jít, *day before yesterday.*  
 tōa-chòh--jít, *one day earlier still.*  
 múe-jít, *every day.*  
 lién-jít, *consecutive days.*  
 kúi-jít; sù-jít; kú-a-jít, *several days.*  
 chí-kūn-jít, *within these few days.*  
 chiē--jít, *on a previous day.*  
 chôi" nō"-sa"-jít, *two or three days ago.*  
 āu-jít, *day after to-morrow.*  
 chôi"-jít, *a former day.*  
 múa-chá, *to-morrow early.*  
 múa-khí, *to-morrow.*  
 mōg-khí, *morning.*  
 mē-hng, *evening.*  
 chiē"-lói-pài, *last week.*  
 chôi"-kái-guéh, *last month.*  
 nō"-sa" kái-guéh-chôi", *two or three months ago.*  
 chí-kái-guéh, *this month.*  
 āu-kái-guéh; ē-kái-guéh, *next month.*  
 āu nō"-kái-guéh, *two months afterwards.*  
 ke-sa" kái-guéh, *in three months more.*  
 jít-tàu, *noon.* bō-hiē"-tàu, *not fully noon.*  
 pūa"-mē, *midnight.*  
 sa" ke", pūa"-mē, *3rd. watch, midnight.*  
 mē-ní, *next year.*  
 chiang-lái-ní, *future year.*  
 kū-ní, *last year.* sì-khài, *the four seasons.*  
 múe-ní, *every year.* chhūn, hē, *spring and summer.*  
 chá-ní, *some preceding year.* chhiu, tang, *fall and winter.*  
 sí-hāu, *time.*  
 bō-sí-hāu, *there is no time.*  
 ū-sí ū-hāu, *there is time.*

### Time.

chá àm, *early and late.*  
sī-sī; siē-siē, *constantly.*  
siē-sī, *always.*  
chiām-sī, *in a little while; gradually.*  
siap-sī, *in a little while.*  
siap-sī--kan, " " "*"*  
ke siap-sī, *after a "little" while longer.*  
chí-kūn-sī, *recently.*  
múe-sī, *every time.*  
múe-sī-sín, *every two hours.*  
há-bun, *twilight.*  
thi' lá-lán-kng, *the break of day.*  
tang-pôi' pèh, *the glimmer of dawn.*  
tō-sī-mih cheng-tiám, *what time is it?*  
ióng-ién, *everlasting.* buān-nī, *ten-thousand years.*  
khùn-kiá', *presently.*  
mák-nih-kú, *in the twinkling of an eye.*  
mák-nih-kiá', " " " " " "*"*  
kú-chāi, *a very long time.*  
boh-kú, *a good while.*  
chèk-png-kú, *as long as it takes for a boiling of rice.*  
chá-lái, mán-khū, *comes early and goes away late.*  
jít-jít, *daily.*  
pái-tóg, *every time.* āu-pái, *next time.*  
jít-mê, *day and night.* pái-mê, *every night.*  
chong-jít, *all day.*  
thàng-jít, *the whole day.*  
hiên-chāi; hiên-kim; hiên-chhū-chāi, *now.*  
jít-kūe-jít, *day after day.*  
jít-lòh, *sunset.*  
jít-chhut, *sunrise.*  
jít-thâu lòh-sua', *the sun is going down below the hills.*  
chèk-sī-tō, *a generation.*  
chia' guéh, *the first month.*  
jī guéh, *the second month.*  
jūn-guéh, *intercalary month.*  
khah-uà': *too late.*  
sūi-sī, *then; thereupon; at that time.*  
chiet-khek; phêng-sū, sū-lái, *immediately; hitherto.*  
khí-thâu; suah-búe, kiáu-búe, *beginning; end.*

# Place, Direction, &c.

- tở-chí, *here.*  
 tở-hử, *there.*  
 tở-lãi, *inside.*  
 tở-hử lãi-lãi, *away inside there.*  
 lãi-pôi", *inside.*  
 tở-chhù-lãi, *in the house.*  
 sì-hái chụ-lãi, *all within the four seas (China).*  
 tở-gũa, *outside.*  
 gũa-pôi",  
 tở-chhân--kò, *"in the field.*  
 tở-chiè"-pôi", *on this side.*  
 tở-hiè"-pôi", *on that side.*  
 tở-mìn-chôi", *before you.*  
 thâu-chôi",  
 tở ka-chiáh-âu, *"behind" you.*  
 tở-chiè"; tở-ẽ, *up above; below.*  
 tở-lâu-ẽ, *downstairs.*  
 tở-lâu-téng, *upstairs.*  
 tở-gút-pàng, *in the bedroom.*  
 tở Kak-chiéh, *at Kak-chiéh.*  
 tở hủ-phỉ"-muèh, *beside that thing.*  
 tở-hủ kha--thâu, *there at the foot of it.*  
 tở-sua"-kha, *at the foot of the mountain.*  
 tở-hủ chhâng-téng, *on that table.*  
 tở-keh-tói, *in the drawer.*  
 khoi hiè"-pôi", *across the river.*  
 tĩ-hng, *place.*  
 tĩ-hng hó, *the place is a good one.*  
 tĩ-hng khah-óh, *the place is too narrow.*  
 sì-hng, *the four regions; everywhere.*  
 i só-tở, *the place where he is.*  
 ưi-chhù, *place.*  
 bô-ưi-chhù, *no place.*  
 tở tĩ-kài-ưi, *in what place?*  
 tở tĩ-kò-lãi, *whence come you?*  
 tĩ-kài, *land boundary.*  
 sì-chiu-ưi, *all around the four sides.*  
 kok-kài, *boundary of a kingdom.*  
 bô-tở hó-pàng, *no place to put it.*  
 sì-chí; sì-phỉ", *the four quarters; all around about.*



## Place, Direction, &amp;c.

- thi", *heaven*. tī, *earth*.  
 thi"-tī buan-muēh, *heaven, earth and all things; the universe*.  
 thi"-chiē", tī ē, *heaven above and earth beneath*.  
 phóu-thi"-ē; thong-thi"-ē, *all under heaven*.  
 kàu-tī-kék, *to the ends of the earth*.  
 tī-gék, *hell*. im-kan; im-hú, *haules*.  
 sua"-téng hái-tói, *on land and sea*.  
 pùá"-thi", *the middle heaven; the sky*.  
 tō-bái tìn-tang, *in the sea*.  
 chiu-úi le-le-tóg, *all around; the circumference*.  
 tong-sim; ta"-ng; tong-iang, *in the centre*.  
 thūan-thūan lín-tóg; suân-suân lín-tóg, *all round about*.  
 sè-sùá", *scattered abroad*.  
 sie-tú, *mutually touching*. sie-sùá, *connected*.  
 sie-chiap, *connected, spliced*.  
 tìn-tang, *in among*.  
 chiē"-ē, *up and down*.  
 chiē"-chiē" ē-ē, " " *(emphatic)*.  
 chhù-pi", *neighboring*. lín-kūn; lín-iū, *near by*.  
 sie-kiam-kài, *boundaries adjoining*.  
 sie-tùi; sie-tùi-mín, *opposite*.  
 sie-hiàng, *fronting each other*.  
 hōg-hōg, *a long way off*. kūn-kūn, *near by*.  
 hōg-kūn, *far and near*. hōg-lōu lái, *come from a distance*.  
 tng-mín, *face to face*.  
 tui-hō-kò khū, *go that way*.  
 pí-tui Sùá"-thau khū, *head for Swatow*.  
 tang, sai, lâm, pak, *east, west, south, and north*.  
 tō-tang-poi", *on the east side*.  
 tō sai-lâm-poi", *on the south-west side*.  
 kūn-tō Hiang-Káng, *near to Hong Kong*.  
 ài"-kàu Tah-thau chiū-sī, *it is just as you reach Tah-Thau*.  
 chang-chhiú lái-kí, *to point with the hand*.  
 chí-tiám; kí-tiám, *to point out; to indicate*.  
 kiá"-tít-tít khū, *go straight ahead*.

## Place, Direction, &amp;c.

chí-kái hie'-lí se' tō-tī-kò? *where is this village situated?*

chí-kái hie'-lí se'-tō khoi-hiè'-pôi', *the village is situated on the*  
[other side of the river.

i khiã-khí tō tang-mûg, *he lives at the East gate.*

hái pí'; hái-kak; hái-phiã', *the seashore; the coast; the beach.*

sie-keh, *separated from each other.*

keh ũ-tiâu-khoi, *separated by a river.*

keh ũ tiâu sua'-lêng, *separated by a mountain ridge.*

keh ũ-tī, *separated by a pool.*

keh bô-ũa-hũg, *separated not far.*

lī bô-ũa-hũg; lī-khui bô-ũa-hũg, *not far away.*

hiàng-lâm khù, *go towards the south.*

nià-pak khù, *go towards the north.*

út tō-pak khù, *turn towards the north.*

nià tī-kò khù? *which way shall I go?*

lū kái-chôn-thâu nià-m-tiéh, *the head of your boat is directed*  
[wrong.

lī-chí-kò ũ-sa'-jít lōu-thâu, *distant from here three days' journey.*

lī-chí-kò ũ cháp-phòu-lōu, *distant from here ten leagues of road.*

lī-chí-kò chiã'-kàu nō-lí-lōu, *distant from here barely up to two*  
[lī only.

mài' út-lâi, út-khù, *don't turn to and fro.*

hiè'-tūn tī-kò-khù? *towards which way has he gone?*

m-chai ũ jiéh-hũg-bô, *I don't know whether it is far or not.*

bô-jiéh-hũg; bô-ũa-hũg, *not very far.*

hũg-ã' hó jiéh-hũg, *far! it is not very far.*

hũg pūa' jít lōu-thâu, *it is distant half a day's journey.*

chhoi'-lī-hũg, *distant a thousand lī.*

būan-lī-hũg, *distant ten-thousand lī.*

hũg kàu-bô-kék, *distant beyond limit.*

chí-tiâu hũg kúi-huáh, *by this road distant a few steps.*

khah-hũg-lī, *O, it's too far.*

mê-hng khá ôi-tit-kàu, mê? *Can I get there by evening?*

ù-ká'-bōi-ã, *afraid you can't.*

ài' pèi-khí sua'-téng, chék-tiám-cheng ôi-tit-kàu, mê? *I want to*  
*climb the mountain, in an hour can I reach (the top)?*

chò-hiè'-kōi, ã! *how so easy as that!*

ài'-kàu a-būe? ka-lô, *are we about to reach there? Far from it.*

### Quantity.

- se-su ; lân-ló, *a little.*  
 se-su-kiá" ; lân-lân ló-ló, *a very little.*  
 chhoh-kiá", *a small quantity.*  
 nih-kiá", *just a little bit.*  
 ũ-kúi-cháp, *a few tens.*  
 ũ-chék chat-kiá", *a little space (a measure of distance).*  
 chék-chūa, *one stretch ; one passage.*  
 háp-ke, *the whole house.*  
 kàu-chok ; m̄-kàu-chok, *enough ; not enough.*  
 chok-ēng, *enough for use.*  
 m̄-kàu-ēng, *not enough for use.*  
 m̄-lā-sái, *not enough to meet expenses.*  
 m̄-kàu-kài, *not a complete one.*  
 háp-kái si-chiè-se", *all of them are that way.*  
 chōi-chōi ; tōa-bó-muēh, *a great deal.*  
 chié-chié, *a very little.*  
 ũ-chōi-chié, *there are more or less.*  
 tih-kiá", *a little bit.*  
 lân-tiám, *a few drops.*  
 chék-tiám, *one drop.*  
 lân-liáp, *a few grains.*  
 chhō-kàu-tī", *put it in till full.*  
 chhō-kàu pūa"-tī", *put in till half full.*  
 ũ-jiéh-chōi-kài, *how many are there ?*  
 ũ-jiéh-tōa, *how large is it ?*  
 ũ-jiéh-tī", *how full is it ?*  
 khat-khat-kàn, *barely enough.*  
 siè-siè-kàu, " "  
 ũ-hân, *it has a limit.*  
 bô-kài-hân, *illimitable.*  
 hân-i chap-jit, *limited him to ten days.*  
 ũ-hân ũ-liăng, *there are limits and measures.*  
 bô-hân bô-liăng, *limitless.*  
 tiám-kiá"-ni", *a very little.*  
 ũ-kúi-liáp, *a few grains.*  
 tōa-ē, *a large quantity.*  
 siàu-m̄-liáu, *can't count to the end.*  
 siàu-m̄-tit, *countless.*  
 siàu-jiéh-chōi, *count, how many there are.*  
 bô-mih-chōi, *not very much or many.*

### Quantity.

- pua<sup>4</sup>-kuéh, *half a length.*  
 chék-úe, *one half.*  
 sa<sup>4</sup>-suà<sup>4</sup>; cháp-hūn-sa<sup>4</sup>, *three-tenths.*  
 ngōu-hun-sa<sup>4</sup>, *three-fifths.*  
 poih-hūn chék, *one-eighth.*  
 chék peh, chék-chhoi<sup>4</sup>, *one hundred, one thousand.*  
 chhoi<sup>4</sup>-chhoi<sup>4</sup> būan-būan, *thousands and tens of thousands.*  
 niē jiéh-chōi, *it measures how many? Go measure how many.*  
 niē i jiéh-kūi<sup>4</sup>? *measure it how high?*  
 niē i jiéh-chhūm? *measure it how deep?*  
 niē i jiéh-chhién? *measure it how shallow?*  
 niē i jiéh-khuah? *measure it how wide?*  
 khūi niē-i kái-chhūn-chhūch, *measure its feet and inches; get its*  
[dimensions.  
 chék-pé, *a handful.*  
 me<sup>4</sup> chék-pé-bí, *scoop up a handful of rice.*  
 chék-phóng, *a double handful.*  
 nák-chék-nák, *snatch up a snatch; a snatch.*  
 chék-tháng siē-siē, *the bucket is rather scant.*  
 khiēh-táu lài mē-nām, *take a peck-measure and measure the salt.*  
 niē-thōi<sup>4</sup> jiéh-chōi-tāg, *measure and see how much its length.*  
 téng-i jiéh-chōi kún-tāg, *have weigh it, how many pounds heavy.*  
 téng-hó a-būo, *have you weighed it or not yet?*  
 téng-hó--háu, *have weighed it.*  
 téng-hó--háu m-kàu, *weighed it, it isn't enough.*  
 phēng-ngūn, *to weigh silver.*  
 phēng-ū sa<sup>4</sup>-cháp-nié, *it weighs thirty ounces.*  
 lóng-chóng, *all.*  
 chhū lāi lóng chóng-nàng, *all the people in the house.*  
 chēng-nàng hàng-hók i, *all the people submitted themselves to him.*  
 chēng-chēng sī pē<sup>4</sup>-iē<sup>4</sup>, *all [emphatic] are of the same kind.*  
 chōi-chāi, bô-kò hó-pàng, *very many, no place to put them.*  
 thàn m kàu só hui, *earned not enough (to meet) expenses.*  
 thàn bô-lā-chiāh, *earned not enough to eat.*  
 pāng-lāi, chūg-kài sī hūc-hun, *in the room all was smoke, i.e. filled*  
[with smoke.

### The Article.

Often there is nothing to take the place of the Article. Yet when necessary, there are ways of expressing both the Definite and the Indefinite.

The Definite is indicated by simple emphasis, as, *bī-sòu hó, the taste is good*; or, by calling in the aid of the demonstrative pronouns, used with or without a classifier; or, by description.

The Indefinite is indicated by the help of the verb *sī* or *ũ* preceding the noun, or by the use of a classifier placed before the noun. When placed after the noun its significance is changed.

*nâng lái, a man comes. jít chhut, the sun rises.*  
*guéh lóh, the moon sets. lûi hiáng, the thunder peals.*  
*sī-bé, it is a horse. sī-gô, it is a cow.*  
*sī-káu, „ „ „ dog. sī-ngiau, „ „ „ cat.*  
*sī-tu, „ „ „ pig. sī-iè, „ „ „ sheep.*  
*sī-koi, „ „ „ fowl. sī-ah, „ „ „ duck.*  
*sī-gó, „ „ „ goose. sī-chiáu, „ „ „ bird.*  
*ũ-kài jiáng, there is a noise.*  
*ũ-kài-nâ tō, there is a basket there.*  
*tiâu-soh, a rope. ũ-tiâu-sūa, there is a thread.*  
*ũ-phng-chbeh, there is a book.*  
*tiē chúa, a sheet of paper.*  
*ũ chék-kha-sie, there is a box.*  
*niá-sa, a jacket. niá-mua, a shawl.*  
*pē-nâng, a sick man. nâng pē, the man is sick.*  
*ôih-mûg, a narrow door. mûg ôih, the door is narrow.*  
*tâng-tà, a heavy load. tà tâng, the load is heavy.*  
*tī-kài? which one? tōa-kài, the big one.*  
*khích tōa-kài-lái, get the big one and come.*  
*khích kài-tōa-kài-lái, get a big one and come.*  
*kài-tōa, this one is large, or, it is large.*  
*tī-kài sī? which one is it? sī-kūn--kài, it is the near one.*  
*sī-hū-poi tiám--kài, it is that spotted one.*  
*sī-lâm-sek--kài, it is the blue colored one.*  
*sī-hū iū-âng--kài, it is the one painted red.*  
*sī-âng-sek--kài, it is the yellow one.*  
*sī-chí-ou--kài, it is this black one.*  
*sī-hū-péh--kài, it is that white one.*

### The Article.

í-í--kái, *the round one.*      sì-pang--kái, *the square one.*

sa'-kak-hí' kái, *the three cornered one.*

sí chheng-tûg-sa' kái, *it is the one wearing a long gown.*

sí tì kûe-lóih kái, *it is the one who has on a bamboo hat.*

sí chià'-jíp--kái, *it is the one who has just entered.*

sí hú ài'-chhut-mûg kái, *it is that one about to go out at the door*

ũ-kái-nâng chò-tô-í', *there is a man sitting in the chair.*

tô-í' chò-ũ kái-nâng, *in the chair sitting there is a man.*

tô-í' chò--kái-nâng, *the man sitting in the chair.*

í-nâng chò-tô-í', *he, the man, was sitting in the chair.*

nâng ũ poi'-mín, *the man had a pitted face.*

ũ-poi'-mín nâng, *a man with a pitted face.*

poi'-mín-nâng tà', *the man with a pitted face said.*

biê-chôi' ũ sêng-chhiũ, *before the temple there was a banyan tree.*

biê-chôi' kái-sêng-chhiũ, *the banyan which was before the temple.*

í sí siá-jí kái, *he is a writer.*

siá-jí--kái chiũ-sí chí-kái, *this is the one that is the writer.*

chiá m-sí, bú iá-m-sí, *this is not (the one), and that also is not (the one).*

thâng-chá lòi bôí-hù--kái sí lù mē? *the one that came a while ago to sell fish, was it you.*

úa chiũ-sí, *I am (the one).*

phah-mûg--kái chiũ-sí chí-kái ā? *the one that knocked at the door, [is this he, eh?*

m-sí chí-kái ā, *it was not this one (said doubtingly).*

gú-chú sí tì-tiàng? *who is the owner of the ox?*

gú-chú kái-mià' kiè-chò A-sam, *the owner of the cow, his name is [called A Sam.*

póu-ôi kái-nâng lòi, *the (or a) shoemaker has come.*

cha-jít lòi chò-ôi--kái tō-mûg-gúa, *the shoemaker who came yesterday, is outside the door.*

tát-chí'--kái sí chí-kái, *the valuable one is this one.*

siâng chhiet-iàu sí chiè'-se', *the most important (thing) is thus [and so.*

í só-khí kái chhù sí chhà--chò-kái, *the house which he built is a [wooden one.*

### Prepositions and equivalents.

**AT**—tō-chhù, *at home.*

i tō-choh khang-khùe, *he is at (doing) work.*

i tō-hiè'-pôi', *he is at the other side.*

i tō-chū-che, *he is at the school.*

tō-chiáh jit-tàu-png kái si-hau, *at the time of eating the noon*  
[rice (dinner time).]

**ON**—tō-hū-téng, *on there.*

tō tú-téng--kò, *on the top of the cupboard.*

tō hái-mìn, *on the sea.* tō tī-chiē', *on the globe.*

tō mìn-chhng-téng, *on the bed.*

tō thau-téng phau-thau-pòu, *on his head was wound a turban.*

tō chūn-téng ũ chōi-chōi nang, *on the boat there were many*  
[people.]

tō lōu-chiē' chiū ngō--tiēh i, *on the road I met him.*

**IN**—lāi, *in.* i jip-lāi, *he entered in.* tō i-lāi, *in.*

lāi ũ sin-se' hó-mng, *within is a teacher (of whom you) may*  
[inquire.]

lāi ũ si-mih-muēh bô? *within is there anything or not?*

àng-tói ũ-chúi, *in the jar is water.*

**TO**—i khū E-mng, *he has gone (to) Amoy.*

i jip-lāi-tī, *he has gone (to) the country.*

ài'-khū tī-kò? *wants to go (to) where?*

kàu-chí-lāi, *up to this (time or place).*

chò-mih-sū khut-i? *he did what to him?*

tūi-i tà', *said to him.*

sa', khiēh-hōi'-i, *the jacket, take and give it to him.*

**OF**—kái, *of (see Possessive Case).*

**BEYOND**—Theng-hái kùe-khū, *beyond Theng-hai.*

kùe-kài-hân, *beyond the boundary.*

kùe-kok, *beyond the kingdom.* kùe-si, *beyond the time.*

kùe-hūn, *beyond what pertains to him.*

kùe-úa só-siā', *beyond what I supposed.*

Jit-png-kok kùe-khū chiū-si hái, *beyond Japan it is ocean.*

chōi-kùe i só-hun-hū, *beyond what he enjoined.*

**ADJOINING**—sie-kiam-kài, *adjoining each other.*

nō-koi' chhū-āu sie-tú, *the backs of the two houses touch each*  
[other.]

### Prepositions and equivalents.

UP AND DOWN—chiē-ě, *above and below.*

tō-chiē--kò lóh--lái, *he came down from up there.*

peh-chiē-sua, *he climbed up the hill.*

ài-chiē chiū-chiē, ài-lóh chiū-lóh, *if he wants to go up he'll go up, if he wants to come down he'll come down.*

khí-khū lóh--lái, *ascend and descend.*

OVER AND UNDER—tō-mûg-bâi-chiē, *over the door.*

sua-chiē ũ-hûn, *over the mountain there was a cloud.*

tō-chhûg ẽ ũ-kha-tâh, *under the table is a footstool.*

tō-chhûg-téng ũ-muêh-kiâ, *on the table were some things.*

jī-châp-gūa, *over twenty.*

jī-châp ũ-ū, *twenty and more.*

AROUND—sì chiu-ûi ũ-láu-chiàng, *all around were soldiers.*

sì-phî chiū-chúi, *all around was water.*

chiu-ûi chêng-chêng sì-tek, *all around were bamboos.*

THROUGH—síc-thàng, *through from one to the other.*

thàng-hú-tiáu-hâng, *through that passage way.*

ài-sú kâi-khang ôi-thàng a-bôi? *I want to bore a hole, can it go through or not? ôi-thàng, can go through.*

thàng-chí-kò kùe, *went through this way.*

ôi-thong-huang, *the wind can pass through.*

WITH—khiêh-bí-niê chò-pû-khū, *take rice along.*

kâng-i phuêh-sie, *chat with him.*

UNTIL—kâu, chí-kâu, tán-kâu, thêng-kâu, thâi-kâu.

OUTSIDE AND INSIDE—gūa-kháu, *outside.*

gūa-mîn; lăi-mîn, *outside; inside.*

ABOUT—hie-lí chôi-ău, *all about the village.*

iak-liák-tâ chiū-hó, *say about how it is, will do.*

iak-pân, *an estimate of about how much.*

BEFORE AND BEHIND—kūn-chôi, tō-mîn-chôi, thâu-chôi; *before (in place). thâu-soi, before (in time).*

ka-chiah-ău, pue-ău, *behind.*

SINCE—f-ău. chiá-sū-ău, *since the affair.*

tâng-tiâng-si ũ-chiê-se? *since when has it been so?*

sū f-ău kâu-ta, *since the affair down till now.*

BACKWARDS AND FORWARDS—chîn-chôi nǎ-sa-pōu, *go forwards two or three steps.*

thò-ău kúi-huâh, *go backward a few steps.*



## Conjunctions.

**AND**—f-kíp, pēng, kah, kûa.

ka<sup>2</sup> f-kíp keng-chie káng-chí<sup>2</sup> sa<sup>2</sup>-peh-chí<sup>2</sup>, *oranges and bananas together were three-hundred cash.*

chék-kái-ngûn pēng-chí<sup>2</sup> sì-sek, *a dollar and forty cents.*

bói-gô kah-chiah-koi, *buy a goose and a fowl.*

i bói chék-bóu-chhân kah-kûa chék-kò-hûg, *he sold an acre of watered land and a piece of unwatered.*

**ALSO**—iā-ū iā-bô, *also have, also have not.*

ô, lû iā-tà<sup>2</sup> i-kái-ûe, *O, you also are talking his words.*

nâng gô-sí, cheng-se<sup>2</sup> iā-gô-sí, *the men starve to death and the [stock also starve to death.*

**AS, SO**—chhin-chhiê<sup>2</sup>, jû, pēng, ân.

jû-lû só-tà<sup>2</sup>, *as you say.*

pēng-lû só-tà<sup>2</sup>, *as you say.*

chò-sū-jû-siê<sup>2</sup>, *(he) acts as he always does.*

jít chék-ê-lôh uá chiū-jíp-siá<sup>2</sup>, *as the sun set I entered the city.*

jû...chiê<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup>, *as...so.*

ân...chiê<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup>, *as...so.*

ân-lû só-chò chék-iê<sup>2</sup>, *the same as you do.*

**BECAUSE**—uân-in, in-tì, in-ûi-tiêh.

uân-in hiê<sup>2</sup>-kú bô-hôu, *because for so long there was no rain.*

in-tì nò<sup>2</sup>-nâng bô-húa-mók, *because the two men were not at [peace.*

in-ûi-tiêh sîh-pôg, *because he lost his capital.*

uân-in chò-ní, *because of what? Why so?*

**BOTH**—liáng-kái, jī-ke.

liáng-kái chhou-chhou, *both are coarse.*

jī-ke sie-mē<sup>2</sup>, *both are quarrelling.*

nò-nâng pé<sup>2</sup>-pé<sup>2</sup>-jiáng, *the two men were alike wrangling.*

pí-chhū tiêh-sūn kui-kú, *both must follow the custom.*

**IF**—a-sí, jiák-sí, tiā<sup>2</sup>-sí, nā<sup>2</sup>-sí.

mûg a-sí bô-khui chiū-hó tng--lài, *the door, if it is not open, [then you may come back.*

a-sí chiê<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup>, *if it is like that.*

jiák-sí chiê<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup>, *" " "*

tiā<sup>2</sup>-sí chiê<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup>, *if certainly so.*

nā<sup>2</sup>-sí chiê<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup>, *if it is so.*

### Conjunctions.

WHETHER, OR—a, hók, hók-chiá.

lú na'-chí thóí'-û a-bô, *you stay here and see (whether) they*  
[have or not.

i bô-lâi, m-chai i sî-pe' a-sî m-ôi', *he does not come, I don't*  
*know whether he is ill, or whether he hasn't leisure.*

hók-û, hók-bô, bô-chhiet-iâu, *whether he has or not is of no*  
[consequence.

bô-lûn sî-ta-pou chu-niê', *no matter whether man or woman,*

m-kuán-i sî-tôa a-sî-sôl, *no matter whether it is large or small.*

BUT, ALTHOUGH—sui-sî, sui-jiên, tân-sî, chóng-sî.

sui-jiên-sî uá m-ká' siang-sîn-i, *but although it is so I dare not*  
[believe him.

tân-sî û-hôu mài-khù, *but if it rains don't go.*

chóng-sî chí-kái-sû uá chò-m-pat tò-khù, *but this business is*  
*something I don't know how to do, (or, never did).*

YET—huân.

huân-ián-û, huân-liáu-û, *yet there are (more).*

bûe-chêng-û, *not yet have.*

huân-iáu-bûe, *still yet they have not.*

huân-háu bue-û-nâng-lài, *and still yet no one has come.*

THEREFORE—kù-chhiú, kó-f', só-f'-chiá.

THAN—nî-hûe chôi-kùe-i, *years more than his.*

iá'-kùe-i; kiê'-kùe-i, *better than he.*

LEST—khiong-phá', khiong-úi, kia'-úi.

ON THE CONTRARY—i bô-sie-hû, tin-tò chò-chí, *he did not assist,*  
*on the contrary he hindered.*

EXCEPT—tû-tiáu chí-chék-kiá', uá chiū ká'-tam-sêng-i, *excepting*  
*this one thing, I can venture to be security for him.*

THEN, THEREUPON—chiū; jiên-âu.

f'-âu, *after that.*

buah-hún chiū-ôi-ngiá, *rub on powder and then it will be*  
[beautiful.

chhiù-sua chiū-ôi-pêh, *scour it with sand and then it can be*  
[white.

káu-hú-chôi' kái-hie'-lí chiū-sî, *when you reach that village before*  
*you, then it is (the matter spoken of).*

bô-ôh chiū-bôl, *(if you) don't learn, then you can't.*

hên-kùe chiū-ôi, *when you have practised it then you can.*

## adverbs.

Adjectives are constantly used as adverbs, e.g. *chôn măn*, the boat is slow. *chôn kiâ'-măn*, the boat moves slow (ly).

A few common adverbs are subjoined.

**PERHAPS**—*pa-lak*, *hók*, *bô-tiā'-tiéh*.

*pa-lak ũ-chôn hó-tah*, perhaps there is a boat on which (you) [may embark.

*m-chai pa-lak ũ bé hó-khiâ*, perhaps there is a horse on which [you may ride.

*hók-ũ-kiâ hó-chô*, perhaps there is a sedan which you may take (sit).

*hók-chiá huang thâu bô-piéh-kú chiũ-kàu*, perhaps the wind will blow, then in no time at all you will be there.

**EXCEEDINGLY, VERY**—*chì*; *kék*; *sím*; *chãi*; *nê*.

*kék-tōa*, extremely large; *hó-chãi*, very good.

*thi'-sì sím-juáh*, the weather is exceedingly hot.

*sua' nê' sì-kúi'-kúi'*, the mountain is, O, very high.

*hái-tói chhim-chãi*, the sea is very deep.

*kau-khóu-chãi*, very hard (to bear).

*oh-chãi*, very difficult. *chì-chhám-chãi*, very severe.

**NEARLY, ALMOST**—*chha-m-to*.

*hiám-chhái ài'-ka-laùh*, very nearly it was about to fall.

*hiám-hiám m-kì'*, almost lost sight of it.

*lím-lím ài'-puáh*, nearly about to fall, or, nearly ready to fall.

*chiang-kùn gō-sí*, nearly starved to death.

*chuáh-se-su ôi-jíp-káng*, just a little more and then could have [entered the channel.

**VERILY, TRULY**—*sít-chãi*; *kúa'-chin*.

*úa sít-chãi káng-lý-tà'*, verily I say unto you.

*chí-kái-sū kúa'-chin sì a-m-sí*, this matter is it truly so or not?

*chin-chin sít-sít*, veritably true.

*tùi-tùi*, exactly.

**SELDOM**—*hán--tit*, rarely had; *hán-ũ*, rarely have.

*chié-ũ*, seldom have.

*hū-kái-kok chié-ũ*, in that kingdom they rarely have (it so).

*sng-soh hán-ũ*, ice and snow (they) seldom have.

*oh-chhūe*, hard to find.

*khū tí-kò chhūe*, where will you go to find it?

**OFTEN, CONSTANTLY**—*sí-siê'*; *siê'-siê'*; *lú-chhū*.

*chōi-chōi-hūe pat-jíp*, many times he has been in.

## Adverbs.

- kú-ũa-hŭe pat kàu, *a number of times has been there.*  
 sie-sùà tà" bô-hiah, *talked on continuously without stopping.*
- AGAIN—chài; lêng-gûa.  
 mài-chài-lài chí-kò, *don't again come here.*  
 tà"-liáu chài-tà", *he said it, and said it over again.*  
 thiah-tiâu lêng-gûa-khí, *tear it down and build over again.*
- TOGETHER—chò-pô; chék-chôi; tàng.  
 tàng-chò chék-ê, *together in one company.*  
 chò-pô tō-hŭ-kò, *together at that place.*  
 tàng-lài tàng-khŭ, *come and go together.*  
 sie-kāng-êng, *use it together i.e. in common.*
- THUS—àn-chiè"-se". *like this; àn-hiè"-se", like that.*  
 ài"-chiè"-se" chiŭ-hó, *have it thus and it will do.*  
 ôh i-kai-ŭe tà" móng, móng, móng, *he repeated his words saying*  
*[thus and so and so (quotation)].*
- ONLY—tua" toa" chí-chék-kài, tia"-tiã", *only this one exclusively.*  
 put-tók chí-kài, iã-ũ pát-kài, *not only this one but also another.*  
 m-khéng huân-iã-ũ, *not only thus but more. tók-it, the only*  
*[one.]*
- HITHERTO—sù-lài m-pat-thia", *hitherto I never heard it.*  
 phêng-sù i lai-chí-bói, *hitherto he has come here to buy.*  
 hiàng-lài m-chêng-ũ, *hitherto have not had (any).*
- SUDDENLY—hut-jieŭ--kan, *in an instant of time.*  
 huh-chê--kiè iáp-iáp-sih, *all of a sudden it flashed.*  
 mák mŭ chiŭ-m-kí", *in a twinkling and then it was not to be*  
*[seen.]*
- PRESENTLY—sím--chê-kiá", sím ê-kiá", ùa"--chê.  
 chhiá"-bue, *not just yet. ùa"--chê chiŭ-chiáh-pá, presently he*  
*[will have eaten.]*  
 tán--chê lâu-tia chiŭ-chò-tŭg, *presently the magistrate will take*  
*[his seat.]*
- EXACTLY, CERTAINLY—tiéh a-m-tiéh, *is it exactly so or not?*  
 chiè"-se" chiŭ-tiéh, *that's it exactly. pit-tiã", certainly.*  
 chiè"-se- in-tap chiŭ-tui, *that answer is exactly it.*
- MOREOVER—huan-iáu; huan-liáu; lêng-gûa; siăng-chhiá"; liáu.  
 liáu i thiap ke-chék-kù, *moreover he added another sentence.*
- FIRST—tôi"-it; tôi"-jī; tôi"-sa", *1st; 2nd; 3rd.*  
 chò-thâu-ê, *at first. thâu-chék-kiã", in the first place; first.*  
 thâu-chhái, *first of all. thâu-chhŭ jī-chhŭ, first place and*  
*[second place.]*

## Interjection.

- ADIEU, GOOD-BYE,** *đéc*, (sì-piét kâi-ue ũ chôi-chôi-iê", words of [parting are of many kinds].  
*lự chhiá"*; *chhiá"*, if you please. (*chí-kù sĩ thông-êng*, this one is in general use,—*put-lũn sĩ-mih-nâng hó-êng*, people of any [class may use it].  
*lự êng-kang*, attend to your work. (*chí-kù tũ sai-pê hó-tà"*, this expression may be said to a mechanic,—*tũ thák-chu-nâng iá-hó-tà"*, may also be said to literary men).  
*lự lâu-jiét*; *lâu-jiét*, plenty of business to you. (*chí-kù tũ-seng-lí-nâng hó-tà"*, this sentence may be used to merchants and [traders].  
*lự chhiá"-chỗ*; *lự chỗ*; *tãi-ke chhiá"-chỗ*, please retain your seat; Ye all, please retain your seats. (*siê"-eng kâi-ue*, words of constant use. Used by visitors when taking leave).  
*uá lải-cháu*, I am going to run. (Said by a departing visitor who has some distance to go).  
*uá lải-khũ*, I am going. (*chí kù iáu-chhou êng*, this sentence is of rather common,—uncultured—use).  
*ài"-hũe-liáu*, I am about returning. (*iáu-kun-chú*, a more cultured expression [than the preceding one]).  
*hũn-jiáu*, I trouble you.  
*lũi--lũ*, I am troubling you. (Polite expressions used sometimes at parting).  
*lự chũ-chãi*, be at rest; be comfortable. (Said by a departing visitor when the host is, perhaps, reclining, or resting in a comfortable position, and means, please don't disturb yourself).  
**AH—ã; ă"**. (*ngỗ-tiệt khi-kũai--kâi chiũ-êng chí-kâi-gũ*, when one meets with anything strange, he uses this exclamation. *ũ-se-su phi"-siê" kâi-l*, with a little contemptuous meaning,—sometimes. —*iã-ũ gi-mỗg kâi-l*, also when asking with the idea of doubt).  
*ã*, *lự bũe-khũ*, ah, you haven't gone yet.  
*ã*, *chá-si lự m-thia"--uá*, ah, you didn't listen to me a while ago.  
*ta" hũn-chãi chiũ-ngỗ-tiệt chí-kâi*, and now you have met with [this].  
**BEGONE—khũ--nỗ**. (im *ũ-tũg-tó*, *iã-ũ-khĩn ũ-tũg*, the tone may be long or short, or it may be light or heavy.—*tó--kâi chiã"-khĩn*, *ũ-un-jiũ kâi-l*, when short and light it has a mild meaning. *tũg--kâi chiã"-tũg ũ-se"-khĩ kâi-l*, when the tone is long and heavy it denotes anger).

## Interjections.

khù--nō, *go (mildly).*

khù nō-ō-ō, *get you gone.*

HIST, HARK,—ss, 1st, (ài"-kiè-nâng tiām-tiām, *when you want to tell some one to be still. or, ài" hām-nâng cháu-khui, want to tell him to stand off.*

lú chhiá" sù--úa, *I beg you to indulge me, i.e. hear me.*

hia"-tī lú chhiá"-thia" úa-tà", *brethren please to hear me speak.*

lú chhiá"-tiām thāi úa-tà", *you please be quiet until I speak.*

iông uà-tà", *allow me to state.*

HALLOO,—ou-ou-ôi, (ài"-hām-nâng chiū ēng chí-kái sia"-búe, *if you want to call people use this vocal ending.—nâng a-sī hūg-hūg im chiū khan tūg-tūg, the man if he is far away, the tone must be drawn out long).*

chūn ou-ou-ôi, *Halloo, the boat.*

A-Sam ou-ou-ôi, *Halloo, A Sam.*

thau-mīn-chōi" kái-nâng ā, *Halloo, you man ahead there.*

LO, BEHOLD,—ng, ā, ũa, ē", (ngō-tiēh m-pat thōi"-kī" kái chiū-ēng chí-kái, *when you meet with something you haven't seen (unexpected), then you may use these).*

ā, sī-lū, *behold, you have come.*

úa khù-ehhūe, ng bò-tō, *I went to look for it, and behold, it was not there.*

ũa, lī tò-chí--ā, *lo, here you are.*

OH,—ō.

ō, lú tà" chí--kù úa mēng-pēh, *oh, when you say that, I understand.*

ō, úa mēng-pēh, *oh, I understand.*

ō, sī àn-chiē"-se", ā, *oh, the matter is like that, is it.*

O,—ō, ā,

I" sek-hét nāng, o, *O, Israel.*

chēng m hia"-tī, ā, *O, ye brethren all.*

PSHAW,—tshū, chhiá lu-lu lu,

tshū, chiē"-se" kái-ūe, *psaw, on such words as that.*

tshū, chiē" se" kái nāng, bò-tō-lí-chāi, *nonsense, on such a man, he is utterly wanting in reason.*

HEIGHO,—ái-ā, ôi-ōu,

ái-ā, m-hó, *heigho, that's not proper.*

ái ā chhiú mài-thāng, *heigho, don't touch it.*

## Interjections.

ALAS—ái-ā; hái-ā. (nā-sī kī-tiéh iu-būn kia-hāi-kái chiū-hó ēng-chí-kái-ñe, *if you meet with anything sad or frightful then use these words*).

lân-nāi, ô, *hard to bear.*

kan-khóu-chāi, ā, *very hard.*

chhi-chhám, ā, *most woful.*

uá chhám, ā, *alas, for me.*

HUM—m̄, hō, (ū-sī gī-kài-lī, *sometimes expresses doubt*).

AH, INDEED—ng; āu.

āu, āu, ka-luāb-háu, *there, there now, you've dropped it.*

O THEN, THAT BEING SO—hiá-li; húai.

hiá li-i: a-sī chiē-se, *O then, if that's the way it is.*

hiá li, mài-khū keng-hó, *O then, it would be better not to go.*

húai, chiē-se m̄-ká-khū, *that being so, I dare not go. (This word li is constantly used to give emphasis, and serves as an exclamation point).*

m̄-chai-li, *O, I don't know.*

tiéh-li, *assuredly so.*

LOOK OUT—ā.

nāng-ā, nāng-ā, kiá-chék-pôi, *look out man, walk one side.*

nāng-ā, chai-kuan, mài-chuāng-tiéh, *halloo, man, take care, [don't run against it.*

UGH—i-hí; ū; ē. (hán-tut thoi-kī, hók hut-jién-lāi-kái, hók chhi-gī kái-sū chiū-hó ēng-chí-kái, *you may use this concerning something rarely seen, or unexpectedly coming, or very repulsive*).

i-hí, hiá chhi-gī-chāi, lā, *ugh, that is very repulsive.*

YES—hē; hō, nō; āu; sī; tiéh.

HO—ô; ā; hói. (The latter is not a respectful way of calling, but is constantly heard in the markets).

hói, kiá-khui, *ho, step aside.*

hói, mài-jíp-khū, *ho, don't go in there.*

PROVOKING—khi. (With the idea of strangeness).

RIDICULOUS, LAUGHABLE—khó-chhiē; hó-chhiē.

ABOMINABLE—khó-ū; kbó-lóu.

PITIABLE—khó-sieh; khó-sieh-chāi.

STEADY—ūn-ūn; kiá-ūn; ūn-ūn-kī.

BE CAREFUL—chū-sò; khua-khua; khua-khua-nē.

OF COURSE—chū-jién; kúa-jién.

NO MATTER—hō-siang-kan; juān; chhin-chhái.



### Adjectives.

Some adjectives find their appropriate place before, and others after, the words they qualify. Others are used either before or after. Usage and euphony determine the position. There is also a variation in the force of the adjective arising from its position in the sentence.

kiám-chúi, *salt water*.—chúi kiám, *the water is salt*.  
 ták-muéh, *a poisonous substance*.—muéh ták, *the thing is poi-  
 [sonous.*  
 chhàu-bí, *an offensive odor*.—bí chhàu, *the odor is offensive*.  
 phang-bí, *a fragrant odor*.—bí phang, *the odor is fragrant*.  
 nah-sap-siò, *a dirty manner (of doing things)*.  
 a-nòu"-kiá" se"-lài ngiá, *the child is born beautiful*.  
 kin-su, *an important matter*.—sū kin, *the matter is important*.  
 í nàng lán-tòá, *the man is lazy*.  
 chhiù phai-chhiàng, *the house is beautiful*.—phái-chhiàng-chhù,  
*a beautiful house*.  
 sít-sim, *a true heart*.—sim sít, *the heart is true*.  
 phé-sá, *a beautiful jacket*.—sá phé, *the jacket is beautiful*.

The English prefixes *im*, *in*, *ill*, *un*, and *dis*, and the suffixes *less*, *ble*, *ful*, *ing*, and *ous*, often find equivalents in the use of *m̄*, *bô*, *ôi*, *bôi*, *ũ*, and *kài*. *Khó* and *hó* often represent the syllable *ble*. *Bô* is an equivalent for *less*; *ôi* and *bôi* indicate the possession or absence of a quality, and, therefore, convert clauses and sentences into adjective phrases. *Ũ* and *kài* are used in this connection.

chò-tit, *practicable*.—m̄-chò-tit, *impracticable*.  
 khó-pí, *comparable*.—m̄-hó-pí, *incomparable*.  
 khó-chhiè, *laughable*.—m̄-hó-chhiè, *not laughable*.  
 khó-kièn, *perceptible*.—put-khó-kièn, *imperceptible*.  
 hó-thói, *visible*.—thói"-bôi-tit-ki, *invisible*.  
 hó-chiáh, *edible*.—m̄-hó-chiáh, *not edible*.  
 khó-f, *practicable*.  
 khó-ùi, *fearful*.  
 khó-sín, *credible*.  
 hó-sín, *credible*.—m̄-hó-sín, *incredible*.  
 hó-sueh, *explainable*.



### Adjectives.

- liâm-chhi, *modest*.—bô-liâm-chhi, *immodest*.  
 chheng-khih, *clean*.—m̄-chheng-khih, *unclean*.  
 ũ-bi-sòu, *has a taste, i.e. tasteful*.  
 ũ bi-sòu kái-muèh, *a tasteful thing*.  
 bô bi-sòu kái-muèh, *a thing without taste, i.e. untasteful*.  
 sêng-ait, *truthful*.—m̄-sêng-ait, *untruthful*.  
 ôi-hâi-nâng kái-muèh, *a thing that can injure people, i. e. an injurious thing*.  
 ũ hok-khi kái-nâng, *a fortunate man*.  
 ngē-sim kái-nâng, *a hard hearted man*.  
 hâu-phé kái-nâng, *fond of display, i.e. a showy man*.  
 ũ-sim kái-nâng, *a kind hearted man*.  
 hâu-thit-thô kái-nâng, *fond of gadding about*.  
 hâu-chiáh-chiú, *fond of liquor*.  
 hâu-chiáh a-pièn, *fond of smoking opium*.  
 hâu-sng, *fond of play*.  
 si kiá-hâu kái-nōu-kiá, *a filial child*.  
 khi-khu kái-lōu, *a rough road*.—lōu-ũ-kò khi-khu, *the road in some places is rough*.  
 kek-nâng se-khi kái-ue, *provoke people to anger words, i.e. provoking language*.  
 thiám-mi kái-ue, *flattering words*.  
 m̄-nâng kái-ue, *revile people kind of words, i.e. abusive language*.  
 chai-chok, *satisfied*.—m̄-chai-chok, *dissatisfied*.  
 eng-kai-kái, *needful*.  
 m̄ eng-kai-kái, *which ought not to be, i.e. needless*.  
 chú-sòì kái-nâng, *a careful man*.  
 m̄-chú-sòì kái-nâng, *a careless man*.  
 ôi-chò-sū kái sai-pē, *an efficient workman*.  
 bôì-chò-sū kái sai-pē, *an inefficient workman*.

Adjective phrases are numerous. Whole clauses are used as descriptive adjectives, as in the following examples.—

- ôi sie-hū-kái, *that can help, i.e. helpful*.  
 bô sie-hū-kái, *that don't help, i.e. unhelpful*.  
 bôì sie-hū-kái, *that cannot help, i.e. helpless*.  
 bôì-jíp-chúi kái-sa, *a—that don't admit water—jacket, i.e. a jacket impervious to water, or, a waterproof jacket*.

### Adjectives.

ôi-ùe-nâng kái-pē'-chèng, *a—that can infect man—disease, i.e. a disease that can infect people, or, an infectious disease.*  
 ôi-nãi huang-hōu kái-chhiē", *a—that can stand the wind and rain-wall, i.e. a weather-proof wall.*

Adjectives are associated with opposites, and may be more easily remembered in that way.

kôî'-kē, *high and low.*  
 tâng-tó, *long and short.*  
 tōa-sòî, *large and small.*  
 chōi-chiē, *more and less.*  
 mé-mân, *fast and slow.*  
 hōe'-tít, *crosswise and lengthwise.*  
 khuah-ôih, *broad and narrow.*  
 chhim-chhién, *deep and shallow.*  
 khin-tâng, *light and heavy.*  
 kâu-pòh, *thick and thin.*  
 hó-khiap, *good and bad.*  
 siēn-ak, *good and evil.*  
 sng-tiām, *sour and sweet.*  
 kûn-hng, *near and far.*  
 pûi-sán, *fat and lean.*  
 ngē-nóg, *stiff and flexible.*  
 chiē'-ē, *above and below.*  
 lâu-iù", *old and young.*  
 kiām-chiá", *brackish and fresh.*  
 jûn-chhò, *tough and tender.*  
 phà'-tôi", *porous and solid.*  
 chiam-lu, *pointed and blunt.*  
 tun-lâi, *dull and sharp.*  
 ou-pèh, *black and white.*  
 kng-àm, *light and dark.*  
 uan-tit, *crooked and straight.*  
 chui-thap, *raised and sunken.*  
 pé'-kiā, *level and sloping.*  
 chbe'-sék, *green and ripe.*  
 phn-pù, *poor and rich.*  
 kùi-chūa", *noble and mean.*  
 hién-ngó, *wise and foolish.*

### Adjectives.

khiàng-jiák, *strong and weak.*  
 chhiò-phùh, *influential and insignificant.*  
 huan-chià", *inverted and direct (style).*  
 tī-luân, *peaceable and turbulent.*  
 heng-sue, *prosperous and adverse.*  
 hūa-hok, *calamitous and blessed.*  
 khui-būa, *off and near.*  
 khó-hóu", *suitable and not (suitable).*  
 chhou-iù", *coarse and fine.*  
 siù-bát, *open and close.*  
 liàng-juáh, *cool and hot.*  
 jū-tít, *tangled and straight (as of thread).*

Adjectives of the same signification are often used in pairs for the sake of clearness and euphony. Such words are called *háng-jí tâng-lui kái-ûe*, or, *tâng-i-sù kái-ûe*, *synonymes*.

chun-kùi, *honorable and valuable.*  
 phín-khiông, *poor and impoverished.*  
 kùi-tông, *honorable and just.*  
 hiã-chūa", *low and mean.*  
 sêng-sít, *true and veritable.*  
 kua-chià", *correct and upright.*  
 péh-tít, *clear and straight-forward.*  
 hū-ngūi, *empty and false.*  
 tong-káu, *liberal and generous.*  
 chha-chhò, *erroneous and mistaken.*  
 ūi-khiok, *false and crooked.*  
 u-ûe, *vile and contaminating.*  
 sià"-siên, *holy and righteous.*  
 uân-chhūan, *finished and completed.*  
 hūn-khūn, *diligent and earnest.*  
 kàu-chok, *sufficient and ample.*—m-kàu-chok, *insufficient.*  
 kan-lân, *hard and difficult.*  
 chhū-pui, *merciful and compassionate.*  
 kbiam-sùn, *humble and complaisant.*  
 un-jiū, *meek and gentle.*  
 kiām-siap, *niggardly and stingy.*  
 kiau-ngāu, *proud and haughty.*  
 huàng-sū, *impertinent and impudent.*

### Adjectives.

pǎu-ngiák, *fierce and cruel.*  
 chhia-chhí, *wasteful and squandering.*  
 keng-khua, *self-important and consequential.*  
 jîn-ài, *benevolent and kind.*  
 jīm-nāi, *patient and enduring.*  
 huân-hua, *lavish in display.*  
 phok-sit, *plain and simple.*  
 hua<sup>2</sup>-hí, *pleased and delighted.*

Pairs of adjectives are often joined together.

kūi<sup>2</sup>-kūi<sup>2</sup> kē-kē, *some high and some low (plural signification).*  
 tōa-tōa sōi-sōi, *large and large, small and small, i. e. large and small all together.*  
 tōg-tōg tó-tó, *long and short.*  
 khi-khi khu-khu, *rough and uneven.*  
 pē<sup>2</sup>-pē<sup>2</sup> thá<sup>2</sup>-thá<sup>2</sup>, *even and level.*  
 uan-uan khek-khek, *bent and kinked.*  
 mēng-mēng pēh-pēh, *obvious and clear.*  
 chin-chin sit-sit, *true and real.*  
 kong-kong tǎu-tǎu, *just and right.*  
 ou-ou àm-àm, *sombre and dark.*  
 láu-láu phièn-phièn, *knaveish and tricky.*  
 lo-lo so-so, *perverted and exaggerated.*  
 jū-jū chán-chán, *confused and inconsistent.*  
 kng-kng kút-kút, *bright and smooth.*  
 chhou-chhou sut-sut, *coarse and rough.*  
 jiáu-jiáu hái<sup>2</sup>-hái<sup>2</sup>, *creased and crumpled.*  
 thám-thám nī<sup>2</sup>-mī<sup>2</sup>, *flattering and subservient.*  
 ua<sup>2</sup>-ua<sup>2</sup> lák-lák, *delighted and happy.*  
 un-un chhun chhun, *mild and gentle.*  
 kek-kek chok-chok, *impulsive and hasty.*  
 huang-huang mǎng-mǎng, *hurried and perturbed.*  
 cheng-cheng khām khām, *reckless and precipitate.*  
 oi-oi chí<sup>2</sup>-chí<sup>2</sup>, *pushing and jostling.*  
 chōi-chōi chiá<sup>2</sup>-chiá<sup>2</sup>, *arranged and orderly.*  
 huan-huan hók-hók, *fickle and changeable.*  
 chhit-chhit chhók-chhók, *cluttering and shuffling along.*  
 i<sup>2</sup>-i<sup>2</sup> uai<sup>2</sup>-uai<sup>2</sup>, *grating and creaking (as of a door).*  
 lh<sup>2</sup>-lh<sup>2</sup> uall<sup>2</sup>-uall<sup>2</sup>, *" " (as of a chair).*  
 í<sup>2</sup>-í<sup>2</sup> lūn-lūn, *round and rolling.*

## Adjectives.

### COMPARATIVES.

The comparative degree is known, sometimes, only by the context.

chí-nô-liáp tien-chu, tí-liáp tát-chí", *of these two gems, which one is worth money, i. e. worth the more money?*

chí-sòi--kài tát-chí", *this small one is valuable, i. e. the more [valuable.*

sí-lú tóa, a-sí i tóa, *are you large (old) or is he large (old), i. e. is he the older, or are you the older?*

i sí-tóa, *he is the older.*

chí-chiah-chûn mé hū--kài, *this boat is fast (er than) that one.*

Ū and pí, *to compare*, are often used in forming comparatives. Kèng, jú, iáu, iá", and kùe signify *more*; su and chuah signify *less*.

kèng-hó, *better*,—kèng-ā-hó, *worse*.

kèng-tóa, *larger*,—kèng-sòi, *smaller*.

kèng-tôi", *more solid*,—kèng-phà", *more spongy*.

kèng-ū, *still more*,—kèng-bô, *still less*.

kèng-tiéh, *more correct*,—kèng-m̄ tiéh, *more incorrect*.

kèng-mé, *more rapid*,—kèng-mán, *more slow*.

kèng-gâu, *more wise*,—kèng-ngà, *more foolish*.

kèng-òì, *more able*,—kèng-bôì, *more unable*.

ū-i kèng-hó thòi", *as compared with him, better looking*.

jú-hāg, *more distant*,—jú-kūn, *more near*.

jú-mèng-pèh, *more manifest*,—jú-bô-mèng-pèh, *more not manifest*.

jú-kng, *more light*,—jú-àm, *more dark*.

jú-háh-sim, *more to his mind*,—jú-m̄ háh-ì, *more not to his idea*.

jú-háh kui-kú, *more in accord with custom*.

jú-m̄-háh kui-kú, *more not in accord with custom*.

jú-kèng chai-kuan, *more careful*.

jú-chhut-lát jú-bô-ēng, *the more he laid out strength the more it [was of no use.*

m̄-jū chiè"-se", *there is nothing like this way, i. e. this way is [better.*

iaú-oh-chò, *rather more hard to do*. iáu-kôi-chò, *more easy*.

iaú-khin se-su, *a little more light*,—iaú-tāng, *more heavy*.

sin iáu-khuah, *the mind is broader*.

## Adjectives.

### COMPARATIVES (CONTINUED).

- sim iáu-òih, *the mind is rather contracted.*  
 iáu tát-chí, *rather more worth cash, i.e. more valuable.*  
 iáu m̄-tát-chí, *rather more not worth, i.e. less valuable.*  
 muéh-kiá iáu-bó lân-ló, *this article is rather better a little.*  
 hié-lí iáu-tōa, *the village is larger.*  
 chú iáu-chhim, *the water is deeper.*  
 hng iáu-sán, *the ground is more sterile.*  
 tū-tháu iáu-tun, *the hoe is duller.*  
 pí-nâng iáu-láu-sit, *as compared with other men, rather more honest—well meaning.*  
 pí bé gô iáu-lát, *as compared with a horse, an ox has more strength.*  
 thàng iáu-chōi, *earned a little more.*  
 sli-púg iáu-chié, *lost a little less.*  
 iáu sue-múi, *more unprosperous.*
- iá--i, *surpassing him.*  
 chò iá--i, *has done better than he.*  
 hūe-chūn iá kap-páng, *a steamer surpasses a sailing vessel.*  
 iá-kùe chò-pát-sū, *(this is) better than to do something else.*  
 khū sī iá-kùe nā--chí-kò, *to go is better than to stay here.*  
 iá-kùe móa-tī-nâng, *better than everywhere else people.*  
 tà-ūe iá--i, *in talking he surpassed him.*  
 ôi-iá a-bōi? *can he beat or not?*  
 ō-iá a-bō? *did he beat or not?*  
 sī-iá a sī-su? *is it a victory or a defeat?*
- kù-i-kùe-kim, *dearer than gold.*  
 phi kùe-thōu, *cheaper than dirt.*  
 ngà-kùe-kúi, *more stupid than a ghost.*  
 lái-kùe-to, *sharper than a knife.*  
 sié-kùe-húe, *hotter than fire.*  
 kúi-kùe-sua, *higher than a mountain.*  
 kié-kùe pát-nâng, *surpasses other people.*  
 tōi-kùe-chiéh, *harder than a stone.*  
 ngē-kùe-thūh, *stiffer than iron.*  
 phà-kùe chhài-thâu, *more porous than a turnip.*  
 kùe-tōg, *exceeding the length,—kùe-tó, too short.*  
 kùe-hūn, *beyond his sphere, i. e. out of his place.*  
 thài-kùe, *greatly in excess,—put-kip, not up to the standard.*

### COMPARATIVES (CONTINUED).

đi-su a-bồi? *will he be inferior or not?*

ta' hiên-chhài iáu-chuáh, but now (things) are a little better.

lěng-kbó-gō mài-se".pě", better to fast a little than to engender  
[disease.]

siǎng-khá, *most ingenious.*

## Adjectives.

### SUPERLATIVES (CONTINUED).

- siăng-khàa"-uáh, *most comfortable.*  
 siăng-hô-thô, *most careless.*  
 siăng-kang-hu, *most workmanlike.*  
 siăng-cheug-uhó, *the most thoroughly done.*  
 siăng-chhù-bí, *the most agreeable.*  
 siăng-hó-chhú, *most useful.*  
 siăng-chhou-sim, *most reckless.*  
 siăng-tá" tóa, *most brave.*  
 siăng-káu, *most thick.*  
 siăng-póh, *most thin.*  
 siăng-iú"-múi", *the most fine.*  
 siăng-lieng, *the most prosperous.*  
 siăng-téng-nâng, *first class people.*  
 sim-sí-mé, *surpassingly it is quick.*  
 sim-sí-chhou, *surpassingly it is coarse.*  
 sim-sí kuat-l, *most determined.*  
 sim-sí sòng-khài, *most comfortable.*  
 sim-khiâu-chhó, *most ostentatious.*  
 sim-sí pek-chhiet, *most urgent.*  
 sim-sí-ngúi, *most hypocritical.*  
 sim-tì-l, *most decided.*  
 sim-phok-sít, *most plain (as to style).*  
 sim-hong-hièn, *most highly respected.*  
 sim-lâu-khóu lâu-lát, *most laborious and energetic.*  
 sim-lí-hái, *most injurious.*  
 lí-hái kàu-sim, „ „  
 chùe-khó-ài, *most desirable.*  
 chùe-chôi, *most numerous.*  
 chùe-hàu" puáh-chí", *very fond of gambling.*  
 chùe pèh chui", *very insipid.*  
 chùe-ló-chhó, *exceedingly bungled.*  
 chùe-sok-mók, *most lonesome.*  
 chùe-úi-sū, *exceedingly apprehensive.*  
 chùe-hàu"-sū, *exceedingly fond of a muss.*  
 chùe-nái-plák, *most capable of enduring sun-heat.*  
 chùe-hàu", *exceedingly fond, or, desirous of.*



## Adjectives.

### SUPERLATIVES (CONTINUED).

chùe-ngī, *most upright.*  
 chùe-khó-hūn, *most hateful.*  
 chùe-lâu-jiét, *most busy stir.*

kék-phín, *extremely poor.*  
 kék-kùi, *extremely dear.*  
 chì-kék, *up to the very extreme.*  
 kék-ue, *extreme language.*  
 kék-jiáu-sék, *most fertile.*  
 kék-iù\*, *extremely fine*,—kék-chhou, *extremely coarse.*  
 kék-hong-lóng, *most abundant (harvest).*  
 kan-khóu kàu kék-sim, *hard to the very uttermost.*

cháp-hun oh-chò, *ten parts hard to do.*  
 chap-hun hua\*-hí, *ten parts delighted.*  
 chap-hun sòi-sim, *ten parts careful.*  
 chap-hun khiàng, *ten parts strong.*  
 chap-hun thó-tng, *ten parts steady, i.e. completely steady.*  
 chap-hun kī-bát, *completely reticent.*  
 chap-hun láu-tàu, *completely thorough.*  
 chap-hun ũ-chí\*, *abundantly rich.*  
 chap-hun múi-l, *thoroughly good intentioned.*  
 chap-chok, *all sufficient.*

tôi\*-it-hó, *number one good.*  
 tôi\*-it-pín, *number one rank (of people).*  
 chín-juáh, *extremely hot.*  
 juáh-kàu-chín, *hot to the extreme.*  
 chín-sim chín-lát, *to his utmost mind and strength.*  
 chín-tà\*, *said all there is to say.*  
 chín-thia\*-lú, *(I) have heard all you have to say.*  
 chiáh-chín-liáu, *all eaten up.*  
 ngún sái-chín-liáu, *money all spent.*  
 chiáh-chín, láu-chín, ka-kī tiéh chū-chín, *he has eaten up every thing, cheated to the uttermost, and now let him put an end to him-*  
[self.

## Resemblance.

pê'-iê', *the same.*

pê'-pê'-iê', *exactly the same.*

pí-pát-kái pē'-pē'-iē', *compared with another one, it is all the same*

kāng-chhát pē'-pē'-iē', *all the same as pigs and dogs.*

pē'-iē' káu pui, mài-thia', *the same as a dog barking, don't listen.*

uá kiau-nāng pē'-iē', *I am the same as other people.*

pē'-tēng-nāng, *people of the same class.*

chék-iē' kái-nāng, *the same "sort of" people.*

pē'-pē' sī chò-sai-pē', *they are both mechanics.*

pē'-ke sī chò-sin-se', *both alike are teachers.*

pē'-tūg pē'-tōa, *the same length and the same size.*

kiau chōi'-kái pē'-iē', *the same as the former one.*

iē'-siē' sī-chék-iē', *the appearances are the same.*

lái-sie-pí sī-chék-iē', *as you come and compare them they are one*  
[kind.]

sie-tāng, *mutually the same.*

tāng-sim tāng-l, *one mind and one purpose.*

tāng chò-chék-ē, *all one together.*

tāng-hie'-lí kái-nāng, *people of the same village.*

tāng-iē' tāng-chék-iē', *the same kind.*

kiau-lú sie-tāng, *the same as yourself.*

pē'-tāng ài' chò-pū-khū, *they alike wished to go together.*

tāng-ní tāng-hùe, *the same age.*

tāng-iē' chhiú-gōi, *the same handicraft.*

tāng-kò, *the same price.*

tāng-hō, *the same quality or brand.*

chhin-chhiē', *alike; resembling.*

chhin-chhiē'-hóu' chék-iē', *like unto a tiger.*

ū-sī-mih chhin-chhiē' a-bô? *is there any resemblance or not?*

ōi-chhin-chhiē' a-bô? *are they alike or not?*

chhin-chhiē' tō-ti-kò? *where is the resemblance?*

tī-kò chhin-chhiē'? *?*

chāi-tit ōi-chhin-chhiē'? *"how can they be the same?"*

chiē'-se', *so; like that; the same.*

lóng-chóng sī-chiē'-se', *they are all like this, (or that).*

tou-sī hiē'-se', *the whole are like that.*

### Resemblance.

ân-hiê-se, *like that.*

ân-úa chiê-se, *like myself for example.*

kâi-kâi sî hiê-se, *each one is that way.*

siang-sū, *like ; resembling.*

chí nō-kiā-muêh siang-sū, *these two things are alike.*

húang-sū sî-mih-kâi? *it is like what?*

húang-sū móng, móng, móng, *it is like thus, and so, and so.*

iê-siê jiên-châi, *the appearance is very similar.*

jiên-jiên, *closely resembling.*

se-lâi jiên-jiên, *a natural resemblance.*

se-lâi siâu i-kâi a-pê, *born resembling his father.*

siâu-châi, *very much alike.*

kiâ siâu i-a-pê, *the child is like its father.*

hó lâi-pí sî-mih-muêh? *we may come and compare it with what thing?*

hó-pí chò-bé, *may be compared to a horse.*

hó-chiang sî-mih-muêh lâi-pí? *what shall we take to compare it with?*

pí-lâi pí-khū, *illustrating this way and that way.*

pí-thôi tî-nâng-kūi tî-nâng-kê, *compare and see which man is tall and which man is short.*

pí-thôi chí-nō-nâng tî-nâng-kūi, *compare and see of these two men which man is the taller.*

pí-tiêh chí-kiâ-hó, *compared together this is the better one.*

bô-nâng hó kâi-úa-pí, *nobody may be compared with myself.*

tùi-tùi, *exactly.*

nê tùi-tùi, *exactly no, (with emphasis).*

tùi-iê, *according to the style.*

tùi-huap, *according to the rule.*

hâh-kui-kū, *according to custom.*

siang-hô, *they accord.*

siang-hô-hâh, *they harmonize.*

kui-it, *uniform.*

### Difference.

hun-piét, *a difference.*

bô-sî-mih hun-piét, *there is no great difference.*

û-hun-piét, *there is a difference.*

koh-iê, *a different kind, or different.*

koh-iê-châi, *very different.*

koh-iê koh-iê, *decidedly different.*

### Difference.

tōa-koh-iē<sup>5</sup>, *a great difference.*

koh-iē<sup>5</sup> se-su; koh-iē<sup>5</sup> lân-ló, *a little different.*

koh-iē<sup>5</sup> koh-siē<sup>5</sup>, *different manner and style.*

i tà<sup>5</sup>-ûe koh-iē<sup>5</sup>, *he speaks differently.*

i chò-sū koh-iē<sup>5</sup>, *he does things differently.*

i só-kū-tōng koh-iē<sup>5</sup>, *that which he does is different (from others).*

m̄-sie-tāng, *not the same,—tōa m̄-sie-tāng, greatly diverse.*

kiau-tī-kài sie-tāng? *with which one is it alike? (often implies [difference]).*

ū kài m̄-sie-tāng, *some are not alike.*

m̄-sie-tāng chiū-mài, *if not the same I don't want them.*

ài<sup>5</sup>-sie-tāng, *I want them alike.*

chí--iē<sup>5</sup> hū--iē<sup>5</sup> kak m̄-sie-tāng, *this kind and that, each is different.*

sī-m̄-hū, *don't correspond,—m̄-hū-háh, don't match.*

kim-jit kài-ûe kua-cha-jit kài-ûe m̄-siang-hū, *to-day's words and those of yesterday don't agree.*

kiau-hū--kài m̄-hū, *don't correspond with that.*

uá só-tà<sup>5</sup> sī-kiau lū só-tà<sup>5</sup> m̄-siang-hū, *what I say is not in accord [with what you say].*

chuáh-m̄-uā<sup>5</sup>, *different not much.*

chha-m̄-to; chha-put-to, *different not much.*

kiā<sup>5</sup>-kiā<sup>5</sup>-chuáh, *each one is different.*

m̄-tāng-iē<sup>5</sup>, *not the same kind,—m̄-chhin-chhiē<sup>5</sup>, not alike.*

m̄-tāng-hō, *not the same brand.*

m̄-tāng-mō, *not the same sample.*

bô-chha-chhò, *no variation; no mistake.*

m̄-hó-pí; m̄-hó-lái-pí, *may not be compared.*

ài<sup>5</sup>-pí chiū-lái-pí, *if you want to compare, come and compare.*

bô-mih-jiên, *not any resemblance.*

chí chiah, jiên-bū chiah, *this one is like that one.*

ûe-lái bô-mih-jiên, *sketched it not much alike.*

ū-ke-iē<sup>5</sup>, *there are many kinds.*

ū-chōi-iē<sup>5</sup> kak m̄-tāng, *there are many kinds each different.*

ū-kài-tōa, ū-kài-sòí, *some are large and some are small,*

sie bô-kàu-húe, *burned not sufficiently (as of tiles).*

m̄-háh chhùn-chhiēh, *don't correspond to the measurement, i. e. [out of proportion.]*

lū chò-ní m̄-tùi-uá chhó-chhiàng? *why do you not accord with [the agreement.]*



## Nouns.

Nouns are of many varieties. It will be sufficient to indicate a few of them.

1. Single nouns, consisting of one word, with a fixed and definite meaning. This includes names of persons, places, and things, such as, pûa<sup>a</sup>, *a plate*; to, *a knife*; chhe, *a fork*; iâm, *salt*; chhòu, *vinegar*; bo, *a hat*; ôi, *shoes*; sin, *faith*; ngi, *righteousness*; hái, *sea*; sua<sup>a</sup>, *mountain*.—The pupil will expand this list indefinitely to suit his own wants.

2 Double nouns, where two words of similar meaning are joined together, to add force, and prevent ambiguity of meaning.

húe-hu, <i>ashes.</i>	kài-hǎn, <i>a limit.</i>
lói-mǎu, <i>politeness.</i>	mô-kúi, <i>a demon.</i>
kui-kú, <i>custom.</i>	kua <sup>a</sup> -hú, <i>an officer.</i>
koi-lou, <i>street.</i>	khûan-pè <sup>a</sup> , <i>authority.</i>
chhù-ok, <i>a dwelling.</i>	iông-kuang, <i>splendor.</i>
hâng-kháu, <i>a hong.</i>	siá <sup>a</sup> -ip, <i>a city.</i>
chàng-pâng, <i>a go-down.</i>	kang-hu, <i>work.</i>
hân-né <sup>a</sup> , <i>cold.</i>	kòu-ki, <i>envy.</i>
chu-kúi <sup>a</sup> , <i>a desk.</i>	chai-sek, <i>knowledge.</i>
huap-tôu, <i>a rule.</i>	hûa-huām, <i>calamity.</i>
ai-khàu, <i>weeping.</i>	li-iah, <i>profit.</i>

3. Descriptive nouns, where a whole clause has a substantive signification.

bák-kang kái-sai-pě, <i>a wood-work mechanic, i. e. a carpenter.</i>
phah-thih kái-sai-pě, <i>a beat iron mechanic, i. e. a blacksmith.</i>
thi-thâu kái-sai-pě, <i>a shave head mechanic, i. e. a barber.</i>
chò-ôi kái-sai-pě, <i>a maker of shoes mechanic, i. e. a shoemaker.</i>
chò-tháng kái-sai-pě, <i>a maker of buckets, i. e. a cooper.</i>
kiá <sup>a</sup> chûn-nâng, <i>sailors.</i>
huang-chúi sin-se <sup>a</sup> , <i>a geomancer.</i>
kà-chu sin-se <sup>a</sup> , <i>a school teacher.</i>
chò-ui sin-se <sup>a</sup> , <i>a physician.</i>
kúan-lí siáu-bák, <i>an accountant.</i>
liáh-tòu kái-nâng, <i>a pilot.</i>
sam-hâng kái-chhái-chú, <i>a lumber dealer.</i>

### Nouns.

4. Diminutive nouns such as in English are sometimes formed by the affixes *let*, *ling*, &c, are made by adding *kiá*". They often have a contemptuous meaning.

ah-kiá", a duckling.	sai kiá", lion-whelps.
sua"-kiá", a hillock.	hím-kiá", bear cubs.
gô-kiá", a gosling.	sai-kiá", an apprentice.
koi-kiá", a small chicken.	seng lí kiá", petty merchandize.
chhât-kiá", a petty thief.	hâu-se"-kiá", youngsters.
gû-kiá", a calf.	sio-kua"-kiá", petty officials.
káu-kiá", a puppy.	mák-nih-kiá", a twinkling.
ngiau-kiá", kittens.	

5. Nouns are made concrete with the aid of *i-kâi*, *his* or *its*; *chí-kâi*, *this*; *sū*, *matter*; and *só-kiè-chò*, *that which is called*. In such cases *chí-kâi* has an intensive force of the definite article. It emphasizes the word to which it is prefixed.

ta" chí-kâi-sí kâi-sū, now this matter of death, or, this subject of death.

ta" chí-kâi, nâng só-kiè-chò-thià", now this that people call pain.  
i kâi-tâm, its sweetness.

ta" chí kâi-sin-tek kâi-lí-sū, now this idea of faith (is thus and so).

6. It is to be remembered, also, that adjectives and nouns are often mutually convertible. Adjectives become nouns and nouns become adjectives. In the list of adjectives already given a large number of the words are constantly used as nouns; thus, *khiam-sùn* means *humility* as well as *humble*; *kiau-ngâu*, *pride* as well as *proud*; *phín-khiông*, *poverty* as well as *poor*. One noun preceding another often becomes an adjective, as:—

chhâ-tháng, a wood (en) bucket.
thih-thôi, an iron hammer.
se"-ue, a cast-iron pan.
chiéh-mûg, a stone door.
jông-sa", a wool (en) jacket.
po-lí-chun, a glass bottle.
iú-pân, an oil can.
thôu-im, a country dialect.



### Case.

There are in Chinese no case terminations as in Latin, e. g. *domin-us, domin-i, domin-o, &c.* Case signification is indicated, as in English, by the use of particles, chiefly prepositions, preceding or following the noun.

The **Genitive**, *of, possession, ownership, pertaining to &c.* is indicated:—

1. By position simply, or by employing an adjective form of speech.

*gūa-kok nāng, people of outside nations.*

*siā'-chhié", city wall, or, wall of a city.*

*sì-sók, customs of the world.*

*kua'-gê, Mandarin office, or, office of the Mandarin.*

*uàng bô, king crown, or, crown of the king.*

2. By the classifier *kâi* denoting one, an individual. It has the force of the apostrophic 's in English, and is by far the most common sign of the Genitive. It always follows the noun. Sometimes *chu, of, its* is used, but this is bookish save in certain idiomatic phrases.

*uá-kâi-sū, an affair of mine.*

*i kâi-pín-hěng, his actions.*

*i kâi-l-sù, his meaning.*

*hie"-lî kâi-kui-kû, the custom of the village.*

*póu-thâu kâi-pè", the handle of the axe.*

*i kâi chhiú-siá, his hand-writing.*

3. *Sók, pertaining to* is used in written language, but in certain cases becomes colloquial, and sometimes has a Genitive sense.

*i chhin-sók, belonging to his clan, i. e. of his clan.*

*siang-sók, mutually pertaining to.*

*chí-kâi-sie" sók-ti-kui" só-kuán? this village belongs to the jurisdiction of what district?*

*Tiê-Chiu káu-sók, the nine (districts) of Tie-Chiu.*

### Dative.

Very commonly the Dative sense is discernible only from the connection. At other times the following auxiliaries are utilized, *pun, to give to; to let, to allow, to; tui, to respond to, used properly by inferiors to superiors; ú, to, with; kâng, kiau, with, together with, and therefore, to, huàng, to, towards; kàu, to reach to, to; in-úi-tiêh, for, on account of.*



## Dative.

- uá sàng--lŭ, *I present (to) you.*  
 khŭ Ka-la-pa, *(he) has gone (to) Batavia.*  
 khŭ Sít-lát, *(he) has gone (to) Singapore.*  
 khŭ Pín-nô-sŭ, *(he) has gone (to) the Island of Penang.*  
 i kau-tài hâng-chú, *he delivered it (to) the head of the hong.*  
 i chŭn-uâng-ke, *he presented it to the king.*  
 i hiên-chi Siăng-ti, *he offered it up to the Supreme Ruler.*  
 khiêh-chúi pun--i, *take water and give to him.*  
 si-un pun--i, *grant a favor to him.*  
 tà-pun i-chai, *speak to let him know.*  
 tà-mêng, pun-i phah-sŭg, *tell clearly to let him decide.*  
 tui-i tà, *said to him.*  
 tui-i kái-thân-ke tà, *said to his master.*  
 tui-i kái-chhin-nâng tà, *said to his relatives.*  
 ŭ-lŭ bô-kan? *what consequence is it to you.*  
 ŭ-lŭ bô-siang-kan, *it is of no consequence to you.*  
 ŭ-i kói-sueh, *explain it to him.*  
 kâng-i tà, *say together with him, i. e. say to him.*  
 kiau-i tà, *talk with, or, to him.*  
 kiau-lŭ-chò, *do it with, or, for you.*  
 uá kiau-lŭ phe-phah, *I will decide for you.*  
 hiàng-thi" tà, *spoke towards heaven, i. e. cried out to heaven.*  
 kák-chiê-thi", *threw it up towards the sky.*  
 kiá-lôu hiàng-sai, *walked towards, or, to the west.*  
 chhù-chôi" huàng-tang, *the front of the house is to the east.*  
 khŭ-kàu Jít-pŭg, *went to Japan.*  
 siau-kàu mŭa-ti-kò, *diffused to everywhere (said of goods exported).*  
 kàu-chí-lái, *up to this.*  
 siê-m-kàu, *cannot think up to it, i. e. never thought of it, or,*  
[unthinkable.]  
 hoi"--i, *pay it to him.*  
 hoi"-i jì-cháp-ngŭn, *paid him twenty dollars.*  
 i kái-siàu-bák tiêh-hoi"--i, *pay him his account.*  
 eng-kai hoi"--i, chiũ-hoi"--i, *what is necessary to pay him, pay*  
him.  
 ŭi-tiêh pē kái-sŭ, *for, or, on account of illness.*  
 ŭi-tiêh sŭh-pŭg, *on account of losses.*  
 ŭi-tiêh chí-kiá"-sŭ, *for, or, on account of this one matter.*

### Accusative.

The Accusative is known simply from its connection. It usually follows the verb.

lòi-chhâ, *split wood.*  
 chám-chhâ, *cut wood.*  
 lòi-chhân, *plough a field.*  
 ní-pòu, *dye cloth.*  
 pòu-ôi, *mend shoes.*  
 the'-chûn, *pole the boat.*  
 siu-lôu, *repair the road.*  
 ta'-thôu, *carry earth (on a pole).*  
 ta'-chúi, *carry water.*  
 kng-chiéh, *to bear stones (between two).*  
 phô-a-nôu', *carry a child (in the arms).*  
 lăh-muêh-kiã', *gather up an armful of things.*

### Vocative.

The Vocative is known by a, o, oi.

a-chek--a, *O Uncle.*  
 a-ti--a, *O younger brother.*  
 a-hia'-a, *O older brother.*  
 chhù-pi'-a, *O neighbor.*  
 uá phêng-iú--a, *O my friend.*  
 lău-tia--a, *O your Honor.*  
 kò-chûn-nâng, oi, *O you man rowing a boat.*  
 khiã-hôu-suã' kái-nâng, oi, *ho, you man carrying an umbrella.*

### Ablative.

The Ablative *with, in, from, and by* is indicated by the following equivalents;—*chiang* or *chang*, *to make use of*, *êng*, *to use*, *i'*, *by means of*, *lăi*, *within*, *tô*, *to be at*, *kâng*, *together with*, *chhap*, *to mix, or, be with*, *kai*, *khut*, *khih*, *with, together with, by, and iô*, *chhông*, *from*. These words express agency, instrumentality, or source of efficiency in connection with nouns.

hó-chang sī-muêh khū-chò? *what shall I take to go and do it with?*

chang phî-jū kà--i, *use an illustration and teach him.*  
 chang hó-ue ua'-ùe--i, *with good words comforted him.*  
 chang-ak-ue kek-i se'-khì, *with bad words he provoked him to anger.*

## Ablative.

chang-chiéh kák-sí--i, *killed him with a stone.*  
 êng-ngûn bói--kái, *some thing bought with money.*  
 êng-khî-khá kái-ue phiên--i, *with crafty words beguiled him.*  
 êng-tôa-sia<sup>a</sup> hàm--i, *with a loud voice called him.*  
 êng-tek-ko phah-chôa, *with a bamboo stick he beat [killed] a snake.*  
 êng-jî tiê<sup>a</sup>-hû, *with bait caught fish.*  
 f<sup>a</sup>-to thâi-nâng, *with a knife he killed him.*  
 f<sup>a</sup>-kôi-mông lách--i, *by means of, or, with a trick he caught him.*  
 f<sup>a</sup>-lút-huap phôi<sup>a</sup>--i, *he made use of the law to punish him.*  
 f<sup>a</sup> chí-kái-sû tâu-se<sup>a</sup>, *by means of this he gets a living.*  
 sim-lái, *in the heart.*  
 i tở-hủ-lái, *he is in there.*  
 chûn-tở kang-lái, *the boat is in the channel.*  
 kang-i chò-pû kiá<sup>a</sup>-lôu, *walking the road with him.*  
 kang-i chham-siâng, *consult with him.*  
 kang-i chò-pû-chiáh, *eat with him.*  
 chhap-i uáng-lái, *come and go with him.*  
 chhap-i chhut-môg, *went out doors with him.*  
 khut-i lêng-jók, *be disgraced by him.*  
 kai-i chbêng-sa<sup>a</sup>, *put on his clothes for him.*  
 iû-pak-thâu lái, *come from the north.*  
 chhông-lâm-pôi<sup>a</sup> lái, *comes from the south.*

## Questions involving agency.

êng sí-mih-muêh khù-chò? *what did he use to do it with?*  
 hó-êng sí-mih khù-chò? *what may he use to go and do it with?*  
 êng sí-mih-nâng kái-póg-chí<sup>a</sup>? *he used what man's capital?*  
 khua sí-mih-nâng kái-si-lát? *he trusted in what man's influence?*  
 oi-lâng sí-êng-gû a-sí êng-nâng? *in grinding did he use cattle or men?*  
 Chiang sí-mih-huap? *what method did he make use of?*  
 êng chò-ní-iê<sup>a</sup> kái-khî-kû? *what kind of implements did he use?*  
 iû-tí-kò chhut--lái? *from where did it come?*  
 ài<sup>a</sup>-chò--i, Chiang-tí-kái khù-chò? *if I want to do it, what shall I take to go and do it with?*

### Gender.

lām, *male*.  
 nóg, *female*.  
 lām-nóg; lām-hũ, *male and female*.  
 ta-pou, *a male* (rustic use).  
 cha-bóu, *a female* ( " " ).  
 chũ-niê, *a female; feminine*.  
 ta-pou chũ-niê, *male and female*.  
 lām-chũ-kiá, *a male child*.  
 chũ-niê-kiá, *a female child*.  
 lām-jĩ, *a boy*.  
 nóg-jĩ, *a girl*.  
 ta-pou-kiá, *a male child*.  
 ta-pou nāng, *a man* (rustic use).  
 cha-bóu-nāng, *a woman* ( " " ).  
 cha-bóu-kiá, *a female child* ( " " ).  
 chũ-niê-nāng, *girls; young misses*.  
 nóg-nāng, *young women*.  
 a-má-nāng, *middle aged, or, elderly women*.  
 hũ-jũ, *a woman, or, lady* (courteous).  
 lāu-m, *an old lady* ( " " ).  
 kou-niê, *a miss*.  
 tau-kiá, *a son*.  
 cháu-kiá, *a daughter*.  
 lām-nóg-kiá, *sons and daughters*.  
 ta-pou-sun, *a grandson* (rustic).  
 cha-bóu-sun, *a granddaughter* ( " " ).  
 cháu-sun, " (more polite).  
 tau-sun, *a grandson* ( " " ).  
 lāu-phúa, *an old wife* (not always courteous).  
 pē; a-pa; a-tia; a-chú, *father*.  
 ái; a-bó; a-niê; a-ne, *mother*.  
 pē-bó, *father and mother*.  
 nō-chhín; sang-chhín, *parents*.  
 pē-chhín, *paternal parent*.  
 bó-chhín, *maternal parent*.  
 pē-kiá, *father and sons*.  
 hia-tĩ; hia-tĩ-kiá, *brothers*.  
 chí-mūe; ché-mūe, *sisters*.  
 sié-nóg-jĩ; sié-nóg-chũ, *little daughters*.

## Gender.

- a-kong a-má, grandfather and grandmother.  
 a-só, elder brother's wife.  
 a-sím, the wife of an a-chek, i. e. aunt.  
 a-m, the wife of an a-peh, i. e. aunt.  
 sié-m; tí-hū, a younger brother's wife.  
 a-i, maternal aunts.  
 a-kou, paternal aunts.  
 bó-kū, maternal uncles; wife's brothers.  
 chek-peh, paternal uncles; husband's brothers.  
 chek-tiét, uncle and nephew.  
 chhi-kū, a wife's brother.  
 chek-peh hia"-tí, male cousins whose fathers are brothers.  
 chek-peh chí-mūe, female " " " " " " " "  
 ang; jī-sài; jī-hu; hu-sài; hu-kun; chiāng-hu, husband.  
 bóu; ke-āu; chhi; hū; lāi--nāng; ke-lāi; ke-kuàn, wife.  
 ang-bóu; ang-chiá; hu-hū, husband and wife.  
 kiá-sài; nāg, son-in-law.  
 sim-pū, daughter in law.  
 tāng-sái, sisters-in-law.  
 chhi-l, a wife's sisters.  
 bó-l, mother's sisters.  
 tiē"-nāng tiē"-m, the husband's father-in-law and mother-in-law.  
 ngák-pē ngák-bó, " " " " " " " "  
 ta-kua" ta-ke, the wife's father-in-law and mother-in-law. " "  
 pié-hia"-tí, pié-chí-mūe, cousins, &c.  
 a-iá, an esquire.  
 a-nái, wife of an esquire, or graduate.  
 a-siá, son of an esquire or graduate.  
 lū kái-a-siá, your son (said to one of the gentry).  
 lū ū-jieh-chōi chhoi"-kim? how many thousands of gold, i. e.  
 [daughters, have you?  
 lū ū-kúi-kái a-siá? how many young esquires have you?  
 lū kúi-kái kong-chū? how many sons have you? (said to digni-  
 taries).  
 lū khuu-tōng jieh-chōi-ūi? you have older and younger brothers,  
 how many personages? (very polite).  
 uāng-ke, uāng-hōu, king and queen.  
 nūg-uāng, a queen in her own right.  
 chōng-tok hu-jín, the Vice-roy and lady.

## Gender.

tāu-thái, a-nái, *the Tau-tai and Madam.*  
 hûe-siê, *a Buddhist priest; a bonze.*  
 nî-kou; hûe-siê-phûa, *a nun.*  
 a-niê, *Mrs.*  
 sin-se, sin-se-niê, *teacher and wife.*  
 thâu-ke, thâu-ke-niê, *master and mistress of the house.*  
 chûn-chú, chûn-chú-niê, *master of vessel and wife (if foreigner).*  
 chià-chhi; chià-nâng; ngûan-phûe, *the proper wife.*  
 chhiah-kha, *a concubine.*  
 chhiap; jî-nâng, "  
 nòu-pók, *a male servant.*  
 nng-pî, *a female servant,*  
 nî-bó, *a wet nurse.*  
 kiau-kiá-bó, *a nurse.*  
 a-má, *a child's nurse (borrowed and local).*  
 lâm-teng, *adult males.*  
 jiéh-chôi lâm-teng? *how many adults are there?*  
 chhâi-hông, thi-sa sai-pê, *a tailor.*  
 thi-sa sim; má-nâng chhâi-hông, *a sewing woman.*  
 lâm-óh, *a male school.*  
 nng-óh, *a female school.*  
 tóa-lâm-óh, *an adult male school.*  
 tóa-nng-óh, *an adult female school.*  
 hûe-siê-am, *a monastery.*  
 nî-kou-am; nng-am, *a nunnery.*

## Gender of Animals &amp;c.

gú-kóu,	male of	oxen.	gú-bó,	female of	oxen.
bé-kóu,	" "	horses.	bé-bó,	" "	horses.
tú-kóu,	" "	pigs.	tú-láng; tú-bó,	" "	pigs.
ngiau-kóu,	" "	cats.	ngiau-niê,	" "	cats.
			ngiau-bó,	" "	"
koi-ang,	" "	chickens.	koi-bó,	" "	chickens.
ah-hêng,	" "	ducks.	ah-bó,	" "	ducks.
chiáu-kang, (kak)	" "	birds.	chiáu-bó,	" "	birds.
hû-kang,	" "	fishes.	hû-bó,	" "	fishes.
chûa-kang,	" "	snakes.	chûa-bó,	" "	snakes.

kang and bó are male and female of all sorts of reptiles and insects.

## Number.

The Singular is expressed by the numeral *chèk*, it, *one*; *toa*\*, *one, only*; *tók*; *tók-it*, *a single one*; also, by a classifier used alone, or in connection with one of the previous words. Often times there is nothing to indicate either singular or plural, as, *û-nâng-tò*, may mean either that *there is one man*, or that *there are several*.

*chèk-pé-táu*, *one handful of beans*.  
*chèk-tà-thôg*, *one "carry" of sugar*.  
*chèk-táu-lí*, *one measure of rice*.  
*chèk-ûi nàng-kheh*, *one guest personage*.  
*chèk-ki-sam*, *one log of pine*.  
*chiah-chûn*; *chèk-chuah-chûn*; *toa\*-chiah-chûn*, *one boat*.  
*kû-ûe*; *chèk-kû-ûe*; *toa\*-kû-ûe tiá\*-tia\**, *only one sentence*.  
*toa\*-kâi-nâng*, *a single man*.  
*tók-it chin-Sin*, *the only one true God*.  
*tók-mák*, *tók-chhiú*, *tók-kha*, *only a single eye, hand, or foot*.  
*toa\*-sin*, *a single person; self*.  
*toa\*-ka-kí*; *toa\*-chû-kí*, *one's self only*.  
*toa\*-chûa*, *a single trip*.  
*toa\*-chèk-ê*, *only one time*.  
*phah-nâng toa\*-chèk-ê*, *knock at the door only once*.

The Plural is indicated, (1) by repeating the word; (2) by certain plural prefixes and suffixes, as *tóng*; *húe*, *class*; *chèng*; *huà\**, *you*; *hâm*; *háp*, *all*; *kúi*, *several*; *ke*, *many* (*húe* often has the force of a demonstrative pronoun); (3) by words signifying *two*, or *a pair*, as *sang*; *liáng*; *tù*; (4) by collective nouns of multitude, as *cháp*, *ten*; *peh*, *a hundred*; *khûn*, *a multitude*; *tín*, *a file, or flock*.

*úa-tóng*, *we*.  
*nâng-tóng*, *men*.  
*kiá\*-chûn--húe*, *sailors*.  
*choh-chhân--húe*, *farmers*.  
*thák-chû--húe*, *scholars*.  
*chò seng-lí--húe*, *merchants*.  
*chò-kua\*-húe*, *those who are officials*.  
*lâu-tôa--húe*, *the aged, or those who are aged*.  
*hâu-se\*-húe*, *the young, or, those who are young*.

---

### Number.

- nín chiáh-pá--húe, hó-khí--lâi, *let those who have eaten arise.*  
 ke-nâng, *people.*  
 ke-ke-nâng, *many people.*  
 chôi, *many.*  
 nâng-muêh chôi, *the men are many.*  
 muêh-kiâ<sup>5</sup> chôi, *the things are many.*  
 chôi-chôi-sū, *a great deal of business.*  
 chôi-chôi-ue, *a great many words.*  
 liáng-kâi, *both.*  
 sang-se<sup>5</sup>, *twins.*  
 sang-kha, sang-chhiú, *the two feet and the two hands.*  
 chêng-kua<sup>5</sup>, *all the officials.*  
 chêng-pia<sup>5</sup>, *all the soldiers.*  
 chêng-hie<sup>5</sup>-sin, *all the gentry.*  
 sang-min-lâi, *both edges are sharp.*  
 sang-min-kiâm, *a two-edged sword.*  
 sang-thâu-chúa, *a double headed snake, i. e. a mischief maker.*  
 chék-khûn-bé, *a troop of horses.*  
 chék-khûn-hû, *a school of fish.*  
 chék-tiu-cháu, *a flock of birds.*  
 kâi-kâi, *each and every one.*  
 jít-jít, *daily, or, every day.*  
 kak-kak, *each, or, every one.*  
 chng-kâi, *all.*  
 tou, *all.*  
 hām-kâi, *all.*  
 háp-kâi, *all.*  
 nâng siâu, *the number of men.*  
 siâu-m̄-pat tō-khū, *that has never been counted.*  
 khū-siâu-nâng ũ jiéh-chôi, *go and count how many men there are.*  
 siâu-bōi tit-liáu, *cannot count up to it, i. e. innumerable.*  
 sa<sup>5</sup>-kâi si-kâi, *three or four.*  
 chhoi<sup>5</sup>-chhoi<sup>5</sup> būan-būan, *thousands and tens of thousands.*
-



## Verbs.

There is a total absence of inflection. One and the same form of the verb is used under all circumstances of time past, present, or future, as well as of mode of action. The relations of time and mode are indicated,—

**I. By the connection simply.** Thus, when one is speaking of something which from the general sense must be inferred to have already taken place, then the tenses are all past tenses, though there may not be a single word or termination to indicate it. In other words, the tense is determined by "circumstantial evidence." Thus, *uá hám i lài*, means literally, *I call him come*. If it is evident that I am talking of something which occurred a month ago, then, from this circumstance alone, is it known that I am intending the past tense, and the translation should be, *I told him to come*. But if it is obvious that I am speaking of something that will take place next month, then the translation of the same words should be, *I will tell him to come*. Since ordinary conversation among the Chinese is marked by such an amount of indefiniteness, it is not strange that the foreign student, at the outset, is much perplexed. The latter has the grim consolation of knowing that the Chinese themselves are often puzzled, and are frequently heard interposing an inquiry to a speaker in order to get the proper tense significance.

**II. By some one word, or clause, or sentence indicative of time when,** and used by the speaker at the beginning of his remarks. This one word may determine the tense of verbs that follow to the number of a dozen or more. Its effect may be compared to that of a flat or a sharp in music, which flats or sharps all the notes on that space or line. It will convert a past into a future tense, or a future into a past tense.

For example, *uá khù Suà'-thâu bói-muáh, bói-hó-liáu tng--lái chũ pa lói-chiáh, chiáh-liáu khù-gút*. Here are a half dozen verbs, but there is nothing in any of them to determine clearly whether they are past tense or future tense, whether the speaker is telling of something he did yesterday, or something he is going to do to-morrow. The translation literally is, *I go Sratow, buy something, bought finished, come back home, then make ready eat, eat finished, go sleep*.

But, now, if I begin by saying chá-jit uá khù-Suà"-thâu &c, then the words chá-jit show that I am speaking of what has already taken place, and therefore, the tenses are all past tenses, and the translation should be, *Yesterday, I went to Swatow and bought some things, —when I had bought them I came back home and made ready to eat, and having eaten I went to sleep.*

On the other hand, if I begin by saying, mùa"-chá úa khù Sùu"-thâu &c, then the verbs are all to be understood as having a future tense signification. The translation of the words should be varied accordingly, and should be, *To-morrow I will go to Swatow and buy some things. When I shall have bought them, I will come back home and make ready to eat, and when I have eaten I will go to sleep.*

**III. By the aid of auxiliary particles.** Their use is similar to that of the English auxiliaries *may, can, shall, will, must, ought, &c.* Some of these find their proper place before the verb; others follow it, and some may be used, though with varied meaning, either before or after. Some indicate future tense only, actual or relative, such as ài", Chiang ài"; others past tense only, actual or relative, as keng, í"-keng, &c. Others may still be indefinite so as to require additional helps to clearness.

And here, attention must be called to a striking peculiarity of this great family of auxiliaries. Instead of contemplating primarily the *time of an action*, as we do in English, the Chinese are prone to consider *the process of it*. We state the *time when*, and from that we infer the action is either complete or incomplete. The Chinese consider the *action* as either complete or incomplete, and from that they infer the *time when*.

Thus, in the expression, *I have eaten the orange*, we first note the word "have," and seeing that used, we infer that the eating process is completed. The Chinese note the fact of the eating being completed, and from that infer past tense. Practically, this amounts to the same thing in the end, only we approach the subject from different sides.

This peculiarity will account for the form of many of these auxiliaries. They indicate not so much, relations of time, as stages of a process. That process may be already past, or it may be in the future, and so the same auxiliaries are found doing service in

other directions. Kùe, *to go through with*, and liáu, *completely finished*, are examples in point. Sū chò-kùe, *the business gone through with*. Here is a completed action, and, on that account, presumably a past tense. But it is not necessarily so, any more than the same expression would be in English. The addition of another particle might convert it into an unmistakable future tense.

IV. But, since the last method is found to be inconclusive, therefore, II. and III. are combined, and requisite precision is obtained. That is, there may be used at the outset, or along in the discourse, as occasion may require, a chronological finger board, such as chá-jit, *yesterday*; kū-ní, *last year*; i bûe lâi kái sî-hâu, *before he came*; tō puân-huán kái sî-hâu, *at the time of the rebellion*; mùa-chá, *to-morrow*; Hiang-káng chûn kàu liáu, *when the Hong Kong steamer arrives*. And, then, in addition thereto, auxiliary past or future tense particles may be introduced, in connection with the verbs. The meaning is then sufficiently obvious.

Chék kái ui-pe<sup>2</sup> kái sin-se<sup>2</sup> lóh hie<sup>2</sup>-lí chêng-chu a nòu<sup>2</sup> kiá<sup>2</sup>, *a physician go down village, vaccinate children*. There is nothing whatever in this sentence to indicate tense.

Tng hū-si—ū chék-kái ui-pe<sup>2</sup> kái sin-se<sup>2</sup> f<sup>2</sup>-keng lóh-hie<sup>2</sup>-lí-liáu chêng-chu a-nòu<sup>2</sup>-kiá<sup>2</sup>, *at that time, there was a physician who had already gone down to the villages, and vaccinated the children*. In this version, past tense is indicated to some extent, by, tng-si-hâu, *at that time*, and ū, *there was*, but, definitely by, f<sup>2</sup>-keng, *had*.

Mô<sup>2</sup>-ní<sup>2</sup> chia<sup>2</sup>-guéb—ū chék-kái ui-pe<sup>2</sup> kái sin-se<sup>2</sup> Chiang ài<sup>2</sup> lóh-hie<sup>2</sup>-lí chêng-chu a-nòu<sup>2</sup>-kiá<sup>2</sup>, *in the first month of next year, there will be a physician go down to the villages, and vaccinate the children*.

Tng hū-ní<sup>2</sup>—uâng-ke f<sup>2</sup>-keng thia<sup>2</sup> liáu chí-kái-sū, i sūi-si huat-pia<sup>2</sup> khū mī-tiāu i kái siá<sup>2</sup>-ip, *in that year, when the king had heard of this affair, he at once sent out soldiers who went and destroyed their city*.

Chiang-lái—uâng-ke thia<sup>2</sup> chí-kái-sū i chiū pit-ài<sup>2</sup> huat-pia<sup>2</sup> khū mī-tiāu i kái siá<sup>2</sup>-ip, *hereafter, when the king hears of this matter, he will certainly send out soldiers and destroy their city*.

V. There is another class of particles having in themselves no auxiliary force, but which render service in showing a tense relationship between different verbs, the action of one following that of the other, both being in the past or both in the future. These coupling expressions may consist of one word only, as, *ău*, afterwards, or of several, as, *chí-kái-sū ău*, after this matter was past. They may be complete standing alone, as, *súi-sí*, thereupon, or they may involve a correlative, as, *kàu chiè-se' liáu—jiên-ău*, when this was so,—then, &c.

*chiū*, and then; thereupon; forthwith.

*chià*, and then.

*chék-ê*, when; then; in immediate connection.

*liáu*, and; moreover; this being done.

*ău*, afterwards; after that.

*ău-lái*, subsequently; thereafter.

*sū-ău*, after this affair; afterwards.

*jiên-ău*, then; next.

*súi-sí*, thereupon.

*í-ău*, afterwards; following the occurrence.

*chiet-sí*, at that time; continuous.

*chiet-khek*, immediately; thereupon.

*kàu-ău*, later; afterwards.

*kàu chiè-se' liáu*, when things were thus and so.

*ô! hiè-se' liáu*, well! and that being the way of it.

### Correlatives.

#### When — then.

*kàu thóí-kí sū sí chiè-se'—uá súi-sí chiū-hiah*, when I saw that it was so, — I immediately desisted.

*síh chék siap-sí—chiū bô khù*, flashed an instant and then was gone.

*chék mēng—chiū sēng*, as soon as commanded, — then it was done.

*chék-ē-tà—chiū-se'-khì*, when he said it, — thereupon he was angry.

## If had — would have.

chá-jit i chai chí kái sū—i chiū mòi khū, yesterday, if he had known this,—he then would not have gone.  
 mòi-tō chí-hiah—chí-tsūn chiū-kàu, if we had not stopped here,—by this time we would have been there.  
 lū thau-chá mòi-chó-uá—chí-chūn chiū chò-hó-liáu, you, if you had not hindered me a while ago—it would have been done.

## When — was.

i lái tiàng-si—uá tō chiáh, when he came—I was eating.  
 uá jip khū—i tō chō, when I entered—he was sitting.  
 Hì-lút chò uâng kái si-hâu—Iá-sou chhut-si tō Pek-lí-hêng, when Herod was king—Jesus was born in Bethlehem.

## Because — therefore.

uân-in i tà-mòi—kū-chhū uá bōi khut pát-nâng, because he said he did not want it—therefore I sold it to another man.  
 uân-in lū bō-lái—kū-chhū uá bō-tán, because you did not come—therefore I did not wait.  
 uân-in bō-hin-chí—uá khū-chhia, because I had not ready cash—I bought on credit.  
 uân-in bō-ngūn—uá chiū m-ká-ài, because I had not any money—I dare not wish for it.  
 uân-in hū m-tiēh-chūn—kū-chhū uá kiā-lōu-lái, because I did not catch the boat—therefore I walked.

## First — then.

m-si ngóu-ngō siē tiēh—chiū-khū-chò, he did not think of it by chance—and then go and do it.  
 i thau-soi ũ-pī hó liáu—āu chhut khū sie-thái, he first made all ready—and then went out to fight.  
 i soi pa-lói hó liáu—āu chò lōh khū-chiáh, he first made ready—and then sat down to eat.

## Not only — but also.

put-tók i lah ka-kí kái-sa—iā-lah pát-nâng-kái, he not only gathered up his own clothes—but also gathered up other people's.  
 put-tók si chí-tiēh chí-kái-nâng—iā chí-tiēh hū-bie-lí lóng-chóng náng, he referred not only to this one man—but he referred to every one in the village.

**As — so.**

jû-lû só-ieh — hó chiè<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup> khû-chò, *as you have promised — so go and do.*

jû-uá só-pân — kúá<sup>2</sup>-jiên se<sup>2</sup>-chhut-lâi, *as I conjectured — so it has turned out.*

**Although — yet.**

uá sui-jiên sî-lû kái-chú — huân-liáu sói-lû kái-kha, *although I am your Master — yet I wash your feet.*

png sui-jiên uá mién — jûi-sî uá kam-ngūan, *in itself although I do not need to do this — yet I am willing to do it.*

thi<sup>2</sup>-sî sui lóh-hôu — i huân-liáu ká<sup>2</sup>-khû, *although it is raining — yet, nevertheless, he dares to go.*

png m̄-hó — chóng-sî chhîn-chhái, *of itself it is not proper — nevertheless, no matter.*

The above are full forms, but they are constantly abbreviated. Indeed, the abbreviated forms are more frequently used than the full ones, *e. g.* —

Uân-in i tà<sup>2</sup>-mài<sup>2</sup> — kù-chhû uá bô-khû pát-nâng, *may be abbreviated, i tà<sup>2</sup>-mài<sup>2</sup> — uá bô-khû pát-nâng, he said didn't want — I sold to another man.*

Uân-in lû bô-lâi — kù-chhû uá bô-tán, *may become, lû bô-lâi — uá bô-tán, you not come — I not wait.*

Uân-in bô-hiēn-chî<sup>2</sup> — uá khû-chhia, *may be, bô-hiēn-chî<sup>2</sup> — chhia, no cash — buy on credit.*

Uân-in bô-ngûn — uá chiū m̄-ká<sup>2</sup>-ài<sup>2</sup>, *may be, bô-ngûn — m̄-ká<sup>2</sup>-ài<sup>2</sup>, no money — dare not wish for.*

Uân-in hù-m̄-tiēh chûn — kù-chhû uá kiá<sup>2</sup>-lôu lâi, *may be, hù-m̄-tiēh-chûn — kiá<sup>2</sup>-lôu, did not hit the boat — walked the road.*

Thi<sup>2</sup>-sî sui-sî lóh-hôu — i huân-liáu ká<sup>2</sup>-khû, *may be, thi<sup>2</sup>-sî lóh-hôu — huân-ká<sup>2</sup>-khû, it rains — still he dares to go.*

I soi<sup>2</sup> pa-lói hó liáu — âu lóh-khû-chiáh, *may be, soi<sup>2</sup> pa-lói — âu lóh-chiáh, first get ready — afterwards down eat.*

## Conjugational Equivalents.

of

Phah, *to strike.*

Active Voice.

## Indicative, Present.

uá	phah.
<i>I</i>	<i>strike or struck.</i>
lì	phah.
<i>You</i>	<i>strike or struck.</i>
i	phah.
<i>We</i>	<i>strike or struck.</i>

## Past.

uá chêng	phah i.
<i>I have</i>	<i>struck him.</i>
sì-uá	phah i.
<i>It was I who</i>	<i>struck him.</i>
	phah i sì-uá.
<i>(The one who)</i>	<i>struck him—it was myself.</i>
uá m̄-chêng	phah i.
<i>I have not</i>	<i>struck him, or, did not strike him.</i>
uá bô	phah i.
<i>I did not</i>	<i>strike him.</i>
uá f'-keng	phah i.
<i>I had</i>	<i>struck him, or have struck him.</i>
	phah i sì tì-tiáng?
<i>(That)</i>	<i>struck him—who was it?</i>
i	phah bûe-biah, uá jíp khî.
<i>Before he had done</i>	<i>beating him, I went in.</i>
i Chiang ki thûi	phah i.
<i>He took a club and</i>	<i>struck him.</i>

## Future.

uá ài'	phah i.
<i>I will</i>	<i>strike him.</i>
uá bô-ài'	phah i.
<i>I will not</i>	<i>strike him.</i>
uá Chiang ài'	phah i.
<i>I will</i>	<i>strike him.</i>
uá pit-pit ài'	phah i.
<i>I certainly will</i>	<i>strike him.</i>
mùá'-chá ài'	phah i.
<i>To-morrow I will</i>	<i>strike him.</i>



uá ài"	phah	chiū-phah.
<i>If I want to</i>	<i>strike</i>	<i>then I will strike.</i>
ē-hūe uá chiū	phah	i.
<i>Another time I (will)</i>	<i>strike</i>	<i>him.</i>
thāi uá ôi", uá lâi	phah	i.
<i>When I have leisure I will</i>	<i>strike</i>	<i>him.</i>

**Perfect and Pluperfect.**

i soi"	phah	uá, jiēn-āu uá phah-i.
<i>He first</i>	<i>struck</i>	<i>me, and then I struck him.</i>
lū bue-chēng-lāi uá	phah	i liáu.
<i>Before you came I had</i>	<i>struck</i>	<i>him.</i>
lū bue-kàu uá soi" f'-keng	phah	i liáu.
<i>Before you reached here I had</i>		
<i>previously</i>	<i>beaten</i>	<i>him.</i>
uá bue-chēng-tà", i chiū soi"	phah	uá.
<i>Before I had said anything he</i>		
<i>had first</i>	<i>beaten</i>	<i>me.</i>
i bue-m̄ng mēng-pēh	phah	uá-liáu, chià"-m̄ng uá.
<i>Before he had inquired clearly he</i>	<i>beat</i>	<i>me, and then asked me.</i>
i m-jin, tán-kàu lâu-tia	phah	cháp-ē, i chià"-jīn.
<i>He would not confess till the</i>		
<i>mandarin had</i>	<i>struck</i>	<i>him ten blows, —he then</i>
		<i>confessed.</i>

**Future Perfect.**

i bue	phah	uá, uá chiū soi"-phah-i.
<i>Before he</i>	<i>strikes</i>	<i>me, I will have struck him.</i>
ū i a-pē bue-kàu uá soi"	phah	hó liáu.
<i>I will arrange that before his</i>		
<i>father gets here I shall first</i>		
<i>have</i>	<i>beaten</i>	<i>him.</i>

**Potential Mood.**

uá ôi tit	phah	i.
<i>I can</i>	<i>strike</i>	<i>him.</i>
uá	phah	i tit-kùe.
<i>I can</i>	<i>strike</i>	<i>him, i. e. I am able to do it.</i>
uá	phah	i m-tiēh.
<i>In striking</i>	<i>him I cannot succeed, i. e.</i>	<i>cannot get at him.</i>
lūn	phah	ô-i-phah.
<i>As regards striking</i>	<i>I can strike.</i>	



uá eng-kai phah i.  
*I need to strike him.*  
 pit-su-tiéh phah i.  
*It is necessary to strike him.*

### Subjunctive Mood.

úa a sĩ phah i.  
*I, if I strike him, or struck him.*  
 úa nã'-sĩ phah i.  
*If I should strike him.*  
 úa jiák-sĩ phah i.  
*If I struck him.*  
 khó-pí úa phah i.  
*Supposing that I struck him, or should strike him.*  
 chò úa phah i.  
*If it were so that I struck him, or if it had been I that had struck him.*  
 siết-sái úa phah i.  
*Suppose that I struck him.*  
 khó-pí chò-úa phah i.  
*Suppose for example that I had struck him, or should strike him.*

### Imperative Mood.

phah !  
*Strike !*  
 tiéh phah !  
*Strike ! (emphatic).*  
 mài" phah !  
*Don't strike !*  
 m̄-hó phah !  
*Don't strike !*  
 lự mế'-mế" phah i !  
*Strike him quickly !*  
 lự khự phah i.  
*You go and strike him.*

### Infinitive Mood.

lự chò-ká" phah i.  
*How dare you to strike him.*  
 i chuan-lài phah úa.  
*He came on purpose to strike me.*  
 lự khá-ká" phah i a-m̄-ká"?  
*Dare you to strike him or not ?*

i khí lăi phah i.  
*He rose to strike him.*

ũ-pi phah i.  
*He got ready to strike him.*

### Participles.

i phah bue-hiah, uá jlp--khũ.  
*Before he had ceased striking him I entered.*

uá lăi i tở phah i.  
*When I came he was striking him.*

uá chhut khũ nỏ-nâng huân  
 iáu tở-sie phah.  
*When I came out the two men  
 were still fighting.*

### Passive Voice.

#### Ind, Pres.

pi phah.  
*Is struck.*  
 uá pi-i phah.  
*I am struck by him.*  
 uá pi-nâng phah.  
*I am struck by somebody.*

#### Past, &c.

uá khut-i phah liáu.  
*I have been already struck by him.*  
 uá khut-i phah tiêh.  
*I have been struck by him.*  
 uá khut-i phah nie.  
*I have been struck and wounded by him.*  
 uá f'-keng khut-i phah tiêh.  
*I have or had been struck by him.*  
 uá soi khut-i phah kũe.  
*I had first been beaten by him.*  
 uá khut-i phah kàu ou-chhe.  
*I have been struck by him until black and blue.*  
 uá khut-i phah kàu Chiang-sí.  
*I have been struck by him until I was about  
 dead.*

#### Future.

uá Chiang-lăi pi-i phah.  
*I will hereafter be beaten by him.*



### Examples in the Active Voice.

jiāu-i chhut-hie"-lí, *drive him out of the village.* [Tense uncertain].

jiāu-i chhut-hie"-lí háu, *have driven him out of the village.*

chêng-jiāu-i chhut-hie"-lí,

i"-keng jiāu-i chhut-hie"-lí, *"had already driven him out" of the village.*

tiēh-jiāu-i chhut-hie"-lí, *drive him out of the village.*

ta" nah-sap, *carry rubbish.* [Tense uncertain].

ta" tiāu nah-sap, *carry away the rubbish.*

ài" ta" tau nah-sap, *will or about to carry away the rubbish.*

i Chiang ài" ta"-tiāu nah-sap, *he is about to carry away the rubbish.*

i hien-chài tò-ta"-tiāu nah-sap, *he is now carrying away the rubbish.*

i chài-thâu thūn-tī, *he carries earth (in a boat) to fill the ground.*

i ài" chài-thâu thūn-tī, *he is going to carry earth to fill the ground.*

i chài-tlōu ài"-thūn-tī, *he carries earth and is going to fill the ground.*

i tò-chúi, *he pour(s) out water.* [Tense uncertain].

ài" tò-tau chúi, *he will pour out the water.*

i tò-tiāu-chúi háu, *he has poured out the water.*

i khí-chhù, *he build(s a) house.* [Tense uncertain].

i ài"-khí-chhù, *he will build a house.*

i bōe-chêng khí-chhù, *he has not yet built a house.*

i khí-chhù hó--liáu, *he has built a house.*

kua"-hu phêng-tī-hng, *the magistrate tranquillize(s the) region.*

kua"-hú ài"-khò phêng-tī-hng, *the magistrate is going to tranquillize the region.*

kua"-hú phêng-tī-hng hó--liáu, *the magistrate has tranquillized the region.*

i ching-soh khún-pák-gô, *he took a rope and tied the ox.*

i khòh-pit sá-jī, *he takes a pen and writes letters.*

i jiāu-bé chiē"-sua", *he drove the horse up the mountain.*

i Khan gô khò-chhāh-chháu, *he led the ox away to eat grass.*

i lóh-màng tò-hái pha-hô, *he lowered a net into the sea to catch fish.*

i lóng-i puáh-lóh-khe", *he pushed him down into the ditch.*

chang-thâu kái-kám-mi", *he took earth and covered it up.*

i á tiāu chhin-ki, *he broke off the branches of the tree.*

i kí-húe-lōu, *he built a fire.*

i tau-húe chē-kng, *he lit a lamp [lit. fire] to give light.*

jít thau chē-kng thā" ē, *the sun illumines all under heaven.*

jít thau chē-kng-nàng, *the sun gives light to man.*

### Various Passive Forms.

The Passive Voice makes use of the following auxiliaries, singly or in combination,—*pī*; *khut*; *khīh*; *pun*; *kī*<sup>h</sup>; *kūe*; *tiāu*; *liáu*; *tit*; *uân*; and *siū*. But the construction must be noted, as a change in the position of the noun would convert a passive into an active, and *vice versa*, thus, *ngūn tit liáu*, is passive and means, *the money is gotten*, but, *tit liáu ngūn*, is active and means, *he got the money*.

- ēng-tiāu--liáu*, *used up (as a garment)*.  
*khut-tiāu--liáu*, *rotted away (by age or weather)*.  
*chū-tiāu--liáu*, *eaten away (by worms)*.  
*só-i--khū--liáu*, *washed away*.  
*lī-tiāu--liáu*, *torn up (as a piece of cloth or paper)*.  
*hám-tiāu--liáu*, *thrown away*.  
*kák-tiāu--liáu*, " "  
*tiāu-tiāu--liáu*, *tossed away*.  
*khut-nāng muēh-tiāu--liáu*, *been destroyed by somebody*.  
*khut sip-khī chhong-tiāu*, *be spoiled by dampness*.  
*chhū khī-hó--liáu*, *the house is finished*.  
*chúi tá-hó--liáu*, *the water is carried*.  
*ēng uân--liáu*, *all used up*.  
*sū chò-chiā--liáu*, *the business is accomplished*.  
*muēh-kiā piēn-piēn--liáu*, *the things are all ready*.  
*tō sū-kām ũ chiē-se kī*, *in the records it is thus written*.  
*muēh-kiā bō-ēng khū--liáu*, *the thing is no longer of any use*.  
*mài-pī sī-hui-sim só-cheh*, *don't be rebuked by your own conscience*.  
*kiēn-siáu*, *to be made ashamed*.  
*chiang chí-kāi-nāng chò siáu-lí*, *take this man and be ashamed, i.e. be ashamed of this man*.  
*jiák ngō-tiēh hóu mài ũ-só-khī*, *if you meet a tiger do not be surprised*.  
*khut-nāng lūn--tiēh tō kha-ē*, *be trampled under feet by people*.  
*khū-thái i, pī i tò-thái*, *he went to kill him and was himself killed*.  
*pī Siā-lēng ín-chhūa*, *led by the Holy Spirit*.  
*khut-i kuang-piēn*, *be deceived by him*.  
*tī-hng khut-i chiām-chiām ā--khū*, *the country little by little was usurped by him*.  
*chang-iēh khut-i-buah*, *have medicine rubbed on him*.

khut-i khiéh tiéh, *was picked up by him.*  
 pī ték-jîn chhiè, *to be laughed at by enemies.*  
 siū-nâng lêng-jók, *to be dishonored by people.*  
 siū-nâng uáng khut, *to be oppressed by people.*  
 chék-sin khut-i phah-kàu ài-sí, *was by him beaten nearly to death.*  
 lín-kūn kái-siá khut-i húi-tiáu, *the neighboring cities were by him overthrown.*  
 bōi-khut-i iú-hók--khù, *cannot be tempted by him.*  
 huang chhue kùe, chúi liâng, *wind passing over water, is cold.*  
 ôi-tit-tng chí-kái-su, *can bear this responsibility.*  
 kì-tiéh-jit chiū-iē--khù, *when exposed to the sun it melts.*  
 chih-tiéh kua-in sī-tō sī-mih sī-hâu, *when did you receive the official seal?*  
 lú kái-sin chng-kái sī-pī-sie, *your whole body is wounded.*  
 lú m-tà sī-khut-lú gōu--khù, *if you don't speak out it will be mismanaged through you.*  
 chúi pī-nâng tò-tiáu liáu, *the water has been poured out by somebody.*  
 chbiē pī-nâng tong-tiáu âu, *after the wall had been battered down by somebody.*  
 lú mài-pī-nâng só-phien, *don't be deceived by any one.*  
 khut-chóng-tok jîn-chò-kiá, *to be recognized by the Viceroy as a son.*  
 só-niá-siū--kái, *that which has been received.*  
 khut-un-mút sī-tiáu chōi-chōi, *many were killed off by the pestilence.*  
 khut-i lêng-jók bô-ue hó-lu-tap. *when he was reviled he had no words wherewith to answer.*  
 khut-lú khng-kà kàu-uá pua-sim ài--khù, *am persuaded by you until I have half a mind to go.*  
 kàu-ti-kò khut-i liáh--tiéh, *at what place was he arrested by him?*  
 lú kok-lái kái-siá-ip pī-chí-kái-hue sie--khù, *the cities of your kingdom be burned with fire.*  
 pī l-pang-nâng só-hui-huāi, *destroyed by the people of other provinces.*  
 khut-kiám só-sie, *wounded by the sword.*  
 khut-hue nã--tiéh, *scorched by the fire.*  
 khóng-ùi kiau-ngâu in-úi chōi-chōi mī-si khut-uá, *fearing lest I should be proud through the many revelations made to me.*

## Mood Equivalents.

## Indicative.

The Indicative sense is readily discerned. The construction is simple. There is a Subject and a Predicate, or a Subject, a Predicate, and an Object. As in English, so in Chinese, when the subject precedes the verb, the latter is in the active voice; when the object precedes, it is in the passive. A striking idiomatic characteristic of sentences of this class, is the frequency with which the object of the verb's action is pressed into the foreground. We have analogies in English, "The fathers, where are they, and the prophets, do they live forever?" This construction, infrequent with us, is very common among Chinese. A Chinaman would say, "The anchor, where is it?" and he might also prefer to use the form, "The axe, he took it away." "The house, he has rented it," "The letter, he has written it."

*húe sie-chhù, fire burns, or burned the house.*

*chhù khut-húe sie--khù, the house was burned by the fire.*

*chhù—i pàng-húe sie--khù, the house—he applied fire and burnt it.*

*hóu chiáh-iê, the tiger ate the lamb.*

*iê khut-hóu chiáh--khù, the lamb was eaten by the tiger.*

*iê—hóu chiáh i liáu, the lamb—a tiger ate it.*

*nâng hiám-tâi-kong, people blamed the steersman.*

*tâi-kong khut-nâng-hiám, the steersman was blamed by people.*

*tâi-kong—i pun nâng-hiám--liáu, the steersman—he was blamed by people.*

*hóu ak-tiêh-sa, the rain wet the jacket.*

*sa khut-hóu ak-tiêh, the jacket was wet by the rain.*

*i ap-siàu chheng-chhó, he paid the account in full.*

*siàu ap-chheng-chhó--liáu, the account was paid in full.*

*i jih-bí chát-chát, he pressed down the rice closely.*

*bí khut-i jih-chát-chát, the rice was by him pressed down closely.*

*bí—i jih-chát-chát, the rice—he pressed it down closely.*

*i náu-tiêh-kha, he sprained his ankle.*

*kha—i náu tiêh, the ankle—he sprained it.*

*i bói-tiáu i kái-chhù, he sold off his house.*

*chhù—i bói-tiáu liáu, the house—he sold it off.*

*i tng-i kái-chhân, he mortgaged his fields.*

*chhân—tng khù liáu, the fields—he mortgaged.*

*i khù thó-siàu-bák, he went to collect an account.*

*siàu-bák khut-i thó--khù-liáu, the account was collected by him.*

*siàu-bák—i thó-bô-chí, the account—he collected not a cash.*

i ln pêng-kū chhut--lâi, *he brought forth testimony.*  
 pêng-kū—i ln chhut--lâi, *testimony—he brought forth.*  
 tang-mûg chhut ũ nâg-bé chôi-choi, *from the east gate issued men in great numbers.*  
 chí-kái-sū chò-sêng sī-tō Siăng-hái, *this matter was done in Shanghai.*  
 uá bô-thàn hó-hôi--i, *I have not the wherewithal to pay him.*  
 chí-kái sī pí-jū iā-sī sít-sū, *this is a parable and it is also a matter of fact.*

### Subjunctive.

Equivalents for such conditional words as *if, if so, though, lest, perhaps, perchance, it may be that, etc.*

jiák; jû-jiák; thâng-jiák, *if.*  
 jiák-sī, *if it is so.*  
 a-sī; jiák-a-sī, *if really so; if that's the way it is.*  
 hók-chiá, *perhaps; it may be.*  
 kiá-jû; kôu-jû, *if.*  
 pa-lak, *perhaps; perchance.*  
 chò, *it being so; if it be so.*  
 jiák-jiên, *if now then, that is the case.*  
 sít-chài a-sī, *if truly it is so.*  
 siet-sái; siet-jiák, *supposing that.*  
 khó-pí, *if, for example.*

These words are placed at or near the beginning of a sentence, or just before the verb, to impart a Subjunctive sense. They are used sometimes one alone, and sometimes two or three together, to give different shades of meaning and different degrees of force.

a-sī m-tō, lū hó-tng--lâi, *if he is not there, you may come back.*  
 i jiák-sī-lâi, lū hó kâng-i tà, *if he comes, do you tell it to him.*  
 lū, chu-jû ũ-ngún, chiū-hó-bói, *you, if you have money, then you may buy.*  
 jiák-a-sī i m-hâu, chiū-hiah, *if he does not want to, then that's the end of it.*  
 siet-jiák hó-chò, chiū-chò, *if the thing can be done, then do it, or, let it be done.*  
 siet-sái-i tà chí-kái-ŭe, lū hó chiè--se in-tap--i, *supposing that he says these words, then do you thus and so answer him.*  
 pa-lak i thia-lū khng-kòl chiū-hó, *if, perchance, he listens to your advice, then well.*



In common conversation, these auxiliary words are often omitted. There is usually no difficulty in apprehending the meaning. Two clauses or two sentences are spoken in such close connection that the dependence expressed by the subjunctive 'if' is obvious. We have analogous expressions in English, such as, "No cure, no pay." "No fish, no dinner." This curt style is in constant use.

thi-si-hó chiū-ài" cheng-choh, (if) the weather is good then I will work.

ū-hó-huang chiū-ài"-khū, (if) a fair wind then I shall go.

ū-chò-kang chiū-ū-ngūn, (if) work then pay.

ū-png chiū-ài"-chiáh, (if) there is any rice then I will eat.

ū-chūn khū chiū-ài" tah-chūn, (if) a boat goes I will go by boat.

bô-chūn, chiū-kiá"-lou, (if) no boat, then I will walk.

ū nāng-jíp--lài, lū chiū-lài-tà", (if) any body comes in call me.

i lai-khiéh chiū pun-i khiéh, (if) he comes to get it let him have it.

ū chiū-hó, bô chiū bô-siang-kan, (if) you have then well, (if) not then no matter.

ū-nāng-khū uá ài" chò-pū-khū, (if) there is any body going I want to go along.

chá-jit soi" ū-pi, kim-jit ôi-tit hū-tiéh-chūn, (if) yesterday you had made ready to-day you might have embarked.

bô-lā-sou ui--i, tī-tiāng ôi-tit ui--i? (if) Jesus had not healed him, who could have done it?

bô-chí nō"-nāng, bô-ēng, (if) you don't have these two men all is no use.

i tà", bô-sūn Mô"-sai kái-kui-kū bô-tit-kiū, they said, (if) you don't observe the law of Moses you cannot be saved.

hiá! lū m̄-hàu" chiū-hiáh, oh, very well' (if) you don't want to you can stop.

mài-sin-se" khū, liáu kim-jit chiū-ék bûn-chū, (if) the teacher had not gone, to-day we should have translated the despatch.

ū-chi"-thàn uá chiū-lài, (if) money is to be made I will come.

uá chiē"-sua" kái-si-hāu, lū a-si thóit--kī"-uá, chiū-hó-tùe,

when I go up the mountain if you see me, you may follow me.

chò-uá in-tap--i, uá chiū-tà" bô-chiē"-ngiām, (if) it had been myself answering him, I would not have spoken so harshly.

chai ū-bí mién-hām-lū khū-tiáh, (if) I had known there was rice, I need not have told you to go and buy.

chí-kái-chhū khí-lái khiàng, mién-chhiá" sai-pē lai-póu, (if) the house had been strongly built, I would not have had to send for a mechanic to come and mend it.

### Potential.

Equivalents for *may, can, ought, must, necessary, requisite, permissible, &c.*

ôi, *may, or can.* bôì, *cannot.*

ôi-tit, *can.* bôì-tit, *cannot.*

lêng, *can; able to.*

hó; khó, *well, may, or can; permissible.*

eng-kai; ngi-eng-kai, *must; ought; necessary.*

jim, *allow; tolerate.*

chún, *to assent; to permit.*

tiéh-ài; tiéh-ũ, *must have.*

pit-su-tiéh, *indispensable.*

khó-f, *proper; will do.*

m-hó, *not allowable.* put-khó, *may or must not be.*

put-chún, *not consented to.*

put-jim, *not allow it.*

put-chhiet-iàu; bô-chhiet-iàu, *important; not important.*

iông, *it is allowable.*

ôi-tit-ũ, *can have.*

ôi-tit-bô, *can do without.*

kang-hu chò-tit-khò, *the work can be done, (lit. can make it go).*

kang-hu chò-tit-lái, *the work can be done.*

ài m chiũ-hó, *if you wish not to, then you may (not).*

lú m-ài ôi-tit m-ài, *if you do not wish it, you can (be at liberty not to wish it).*

ài m, ôi-tit-m, *if you wish not to, you need not.*

m-ài, chò lú m-ài, *if you don't want to, then be it as you "don't want to."*

m-ài, bô-khút-lú m-ài, *you don't want it, but it is not allowed to you not to want it.*

ôi lín-chò-tit, *it may or will do.*

bôì-tit iú-lí-m, *it cannot be (decided) from your disinclination, i. e. you cannot have your way.*

bôì tit pun-lí m, *it is not allowed you not to, i. e. you can't refrain.*

ôi m-kí-khù, *it can be not seen, i. e. lost sight of.*

m eng-kai chò, *it is not necessary to do.*

m-eng-kai chò--kái, *a thing not necessary to be done.*

ôi-chò-sũ, *it will work; will operate.*

ôi-sêng-sũ, *will work; will accomplish something.*

khó-f chiè-sc" lái-phah-sng, *you may thus and so decide.*

khó-f' chiè'-se', *you may thus and so.*  
 si-eng-kai tà'--kái, *it is something that must be said.*  
 kau-chhap tit-lòh, *can associate together.*  
 muèh-kiá' ôi ka-lâu-tiâu, *the thing may be lost.*  
 mô'-kúi ôi bú-lòng-nâng, *the devil can delude people.*

### Imperative.

Modes of expressing entreaty, command, prohibition, &c.

1. The verb spoken with emphasis is often sufficient.
2. Various auxiliaries are used. Hó is hortatory, used in mild forms of exhorting or enjoining. Tiéh is more emphatic, indicating that the thing must be done. Mái' is prohibitory. Eng kai means, *it is necessary.* Nô' is emphatic.

chô, *sit down!*  
 phah, *strike!*  
 mán, *pull!*  
 jíp--lái, *come in!*  
 léng-i khù, *push it away!*  
 jìh-lòh, *press it down!*  
 á-uán i kái-búe, *bend the end of it!*  
 pèh-tiâu i kái-phûe, *peel off its bark!*  
 sái-i khiá, *stand it upright.*  
 phô'-i pè', *spread it level.*  
 búe-mí-mí', *rub it fine.*  
 buah-kng-kút, *polish it bright and smooth.*  
 ngói-iù'-iù', *grind it fine.*  
 khù chhíp-cháu-cháu, *miz it thoroughly.*  
 lù chhut--khù, *you go out.*  
 lù kuán-thóí'-lù ka-kí kái-sū, *you look after your own business.*  
 tái-ke, nín ài'-chai mêng-pèh, *all ye, now know clearly.*  
 chí-tie'-toa', tiéh-chip-kín, *this cheque, hold it fast.*  
 khiéh-lái pàng-tô-chí, *bring it and put it here.*  
 Chiang tiâu-soh khù-bân, *take a rope and stretch it along.*  
 lù kái-ûe, mái'-lái kip-tiéh uá, *may what you say, not come upon me.*  
 mái'-m-tà', *don't fail to say it.*  
 mái'-chiang-ak pò-ak, *don't pay evil with evil.*  
 mái'-lâu-tiâu chèk-kái, *don't leave one out.*  
 mái'-chhap-sū, *don't meddle.*  
 mái'-chip-l, *don't be self-willed.*

mài-mng chiè-biè, *don't be asking this and that.*  
 lah-búa, mài-khút-i tềng-tièh, *dodge near (to the wall) and don't let it fall on you.*  
 mài-sit-sin, *don't lose your integrity.*  
 hó-khù-chò, *go and do it.*  
 hó-kín-kín kiá, *walk fast.*  
 lú m-hó m-lái, *it will not do for you not to come.*  
 lú hó-khù-bói, *you go and buy.*  
 vún hó-khù-siē, *go, you, and consider it.*  
 lú hó-mài sàng-sim, *don't lose heart.*  
 lú hó mài-kia-ù, *it is well for you not to be afraid.*  
 hó-khù kăng-i-tà, *it will be well for you to go and tell him.*  
 tièh-khù, *go!*  
 tièh-mài, *you must avoid this.*  
 chò-pê-bó kái-năng tièh-ài-ū, *those who are parents must have—*  
 tièh-khù-mng, *go and ask!*  
 tièh-kăng-uá tà, *you must tell me.*  
 năng ài-chò-muèh, tièh-ū khì-kū tièh-ū ke-sāi, *if a man is going to make anything, he must have tools and materials.*  
 lú tièh-sói-chhiú, *you must wash your hands.*  
 tièh-khù-tiāu ak-sòk, *you must put away bad habits.*  
 tièh-òh kiá-siēn, *you must learn to do well.*  
 lú tièh sòi-sim chí-kái-sū, *you must be careful in this matter.*  
 lú tièh-chhuan-pí, *you must be fully prepared.*  
 eng-kai tièh-sūn chí-kái kui-kú, *you must observe this custom.*  
 ta, eng-kai tièh-chai mêng-pêh, *now, you must know clearly.*  
 khù-nó, *go!*  
 chò-nó, *sit down!*  
 lú-nó, *come!*  
 chhiet-chhiet tièh-thói, *particularly observe; take special notice.*  
 nguān-lí phêng-an, *may you have peace.*  
 nguān-Siāng-ti pó-iū lú, *may God preserve you.*  
 khú lú thiá-uá chék-kù, *I beg you hear me a word.*  
 chò-lú-khù, *you go your way.*  
 tà-hó háu chiá-khù, *when you have spoken then go.*  
 chiáh-pá háu chiá-lái, *when you have eaten then come.*  
 sūi-chài-lú, *please yourself.*  
 muèh-kiá siu chôi-chiá, *arrange the things orderly.*  
 kək-muèh siu pàng-nguān-ūi, *put everything in its own proper place.*  
 khìb-i khù, *let it go; never mind.*

### Infinitive.

There is no distinctive mark of the Infinitive. The infinitive sense is to be learned from the connection. A few examples will suffice.

i khù-bói-hue, *he has gone to buy lime.*

uá hám-i khiéh-jī khù-Sua<sup>\*</sup>-thâu, *I told him to take a note to Swatow.*

i ài<sup>\*</sup>-lái-chiáh, *he is coming to eat.*

i ài<sup>\*</sup>-kì<sup>\*</sup> thâu-ke, *he wishes to see the master of the house.*

i ài<sup>\*</sup>-sòg-siàu, *he wants to reckon up.*

i ài<sup>\*</sup> hiáh-kang, *he wishes to stop work.*

nâng-kheh ài<sup>\*</sup>-tâ<sup>\*</sup>-ûe, *the guest wishes to speak (to you).*

hám-i lái-sàu-lôu, *call him to come and sweep the road.*

i tō tán-bói-muêh, *he is waiting to buy something.*

chhiá<sup>\*</sup>-chhâi-chú lái, *please ask the owner of the goods to come.*

kiè-i chò-pô-lái, *tell him to come along with (him).*

kiè-i sêng-thò-bói, *tell him to buy this also at the same time.*

i ài<sup>\*</sup>-chieh lân-ló-ngûn, *he wishes to borrow a little money, i. e. he wishes his pay.*

### The Participle.

A participial sense is imparted by the use of tō, which in such connection means, *to be at (the doing of any thing)*, and sometimes, also by chiá<sup>\*</sup>, meaning, *then; at the same time (with something else)*, and chò, in the sense of *being*. Liáu, and kùe, denoting *past; gone through with; completed*, help give the significance of a past participle.

i tō-chò, *he is sitting.*

i tō-tán, *he is waiting.*

i tō-gút huân-hûe-chhé<sup>\*</sup>, *he is sleeping and has not yet awakened.*

chhù hiên-châi sī-tō-khí, *the house now is being built.*

uá lái i huân-tō sie-mê<sup>\*</sup>, *when I came they were still quarrelling.*

tō-i thák-chù kái-sī-hâu, *at the time he was, or is reading.*

i sī tō-ta<sup>\*</sup>-chúi, *he is carrying water.*

sit-lòh--tiâu, *lost.*

chò-kùe, *done; finished.*

khiéh--tiéh-kái, *picked up.*

m-kì<sup>\*</sup>-khù--liáu, *lost sight of.*

liên-kú kái-to-kiám, *a long tried sword.*

liên-kú kái-ke-húe, *tested weapons.*

## Tense Equivalents.

### Present,

The Present Tense has no distinctive mark. It is ascertained,

1. By the context and the obvious meaning of the speaker.
2. By certain phrases denoting present time, as pointed out in a previous lesson. Force and clearness are derived by combining *sí*, *ũ*, and *tở*, with the verb, as auxiliaries, when occasion requires. In such cases *sí* means *is*, and *tở* has the force of the participial ending *ing*. Thus, *chở*, *to do*; *tở chở*, *do-ing*.

*hiên-chãi — sí*, *just now — there is &c.*

*hiên-kim i tở ũ-pí ài-jíp lái-tí*, *just now he is getting ready to go in the country.*

*hiên-sí i tở-phòu-lãi chỏ-khang-khẻ*, *at present he is in the shop doing work.*

*chí-chủn-muẻh thảng siáp-lầu*, *just now the cask is leaking.*

*hiên-chhẻ-chãi i ũ-pẻ*, *at the present time he is ill.*

### Past.

The Past Tense is discerned, (1) Simply by the connection, or, (2) It is introduced by some such time indicator, as:—

*chhỏng-chỏi ũ, &c.*, *formerly there was or were, &c.*

*chả-sí ũ, &c.*, *on a former occasion there was &c.*

*chả tiảng-sí ũ, &c.*, *at a former time there was &c.*

*hẻ-kải sí-chủn ũ, &c.*, *at that date there was &c.*

*tảng-chả ũ, &c.*, *a while ago there was, &c.*

*tở-kỏu-chả ũ, &c.*, *in old times there was, &c.*

*chỏi-nẻ ũ, &c.*, *in a former year there was &c.*

*hẻ-tảng-sí ũ, &c.*, *at that time there was &c.*

(3) By certain auxiliaries which indicate completed action. This action may not be necessarily in the past. It may be contemplated as in the future. Therefore, in order to know accurately whether the past tense is intended, the connection and attendant circumstances must be taken into account. The examples that follow show the use of these auxiliaries in a past tense.

*liáu — chỏ-hỏ-liáu*, *it has been done.*

*chiẻh-pẻ-liáu*, *have eaten.*

*lẻ-liáu*, *has come.*

*khẻ-liáu*, *has gone.*

sū sêng-liáu, *the business is accomplished.*  
liáu-sū, *finished the business.*

f, *have or has.*

f-sin chiá, *those who have believed.*

f-lâi chiá, *those who have come.*

keng; f-keng, *have, had, or has.*

chûn f-keng jip-káng-mûg, *the boat has entered the mouth of the river.*

kua'-hú f-keng chhut-gê-mûg, *the mandarin had gone out of his office.*

kûe, *gone through with.*

sueh-kûe, *the explanation has been gone through with, or, it has been explained.*

khang-khûe chò-kûe, *the work is done.*

chò-kûe liáu, *it is already done.*

chêng, *have or has.*

chêng-tà, *have said.*

chêng-khiêh, *have brought along.*

m̄-chêng thia'-kì, *have not heard.*

uân—uân-liáu, *finished; completed.*

sū uân liáu, *the business is completed.*

pat, *something experienced, or, gone through with.*

pat-khû, *have gone there (before).*

m̄-pat thóí'-kì, *have not seen it.*

m̄-pat thia'-kì, *have not heard.*

m̄-pat chò-kûe, *he has done it, or, made it.*

i m̄-pat tò-jîn, *he did not recognize.*

pat-thák kûe, *he has read it.*

pat-ngô-tiêh, *have met with.*

tiâu, *away from, often signifies past tense, but not always. When used with liáu the meaning is less ambiguous.*

kák-tiâu, *throw away, or, thrown away.*

kák-tiâu-liáu, *already thrown away. (Action completed).*



hám-tiâu, *throw away, or, thrown away.*  
 hám-tiau--liáu, *thrown away.*  
 lòi-tiâu, *split up.*  
 lòi-tiâu--liáu, *already split up.*  
 phô-sat hu-hiú" tiâu, *the idols are rotted away.*  
 phia"-tiâu ké-sin, *cast away false gods.*  
 im tiâu-i kái-tī-hng, *flooded his fields.*

khù, *indicating that something is gone through with.*  
 mī"-khù, *rotted away, or, rotted (and) gone.*  
 sí-khù, *dead (and) gone, or simply, dead.*  
 huân--khù, *decayed.*

ki". Thói" signifies, *to perceive.* The addition of ki" to the verb is like adding the syllable "ed" to an English verb.  
 thói"-ki", *perceived.*  
 thia"-ki", *have heard.*  
 hūn-ki", " " "  
 siē"-ki", *have thought.*  
 thói"-m-ki", *seeing have not perceived, or simply do, or did not see.*

tiēh especially signifies, *effected purpose.*  
 ngō-tiēh, *met.*  
 thua"-tiēh, *heard.*  
 phah tiēh, *struck.*  
 that-tiēh-kha, *stubbed his foot.*  
 chūang-tiēh-thau, *bumped his head.*  
 kha chhāt-tiēh-chhi, *run a splinter into his foot.*  
 mông tiēh, *touched.*

chai, *to know; to experience,* is used with certain words to denote a completed action.

i chai-tà", *he said.*  
 m̄ chai siē", *he did not think.*  
 m̄ chai phah-sng, *he did not think and decide.*  
 iā-chai-thói", *(I) did not observe.*  
 uá m̄-chai-thau, *(I) did not take care, i. e. I beg your pardon.*  
 m̄ chai kuan, *(he) did not take care.*  
 m̄-chai-kinēh, *(he) did not bring it.*



## Sentences on the Past Tense.

úa só niá-siũ--kái hũ-thoh lŭ, *that which I have received I deliver to you.*

i thia"-tiéh m̄ hua"-hí, *when he heard it he was displeased.*

tôi" khí-sêng--liáu, *the temple is built.*

i lóh-liáu-bé, *he had come down from his horse.*

kì-chai chí-kái-sŭ chiũ kia"-ùi, *when they knew this matter they were afraid.*

sé" lām-jī liáu, *has given birth to a son.*

kì-sī chiè"-sé, i chiũ m̄-ká"-khŭ, *such being the case, he did not dare go.*

kì bōi--liáu chiũ tit-tiéh sa"-peh-ngŭn, *when it was sold he received three hundred dollars.*

f'-keng sí--khŭ sì-jīt--liáu, *had been dead four days.*

kàu chí-kái-sŭ chò-hiah--liáu, *when (they) had stopped doing this thing.*

phêng-sŭ, i-sī chò uī-seng, *heretofore, he had been a physician.*

thia"-kì" chí-kái-ue i chiũ lì-tiâu i-kái-sa", *when he heard this he at once rent his garments.*

i chiũ sŭi-sī tó-tiè", *he at once, thereupon, failed in business.*

i f'-keng chhut-liáu chí-kái kò-sī, *he had already issued this proclamation.*

tà"-ue tà"-hiah, *when he had done talking.*

lŭ hŭan-liáu jŭ bŭe-kàu, *you have not yet rubbed it enough.*

sŭ bŭe-liáu-kak khŭt i chău--khŭ, *before the business was settled up he ran away.*

hŕn-uán ka-kí kái sa"-khŭu khiéh-m̄-tit, *even our own clothes we did not get.*

tah m̄-tiéh-chŭn, *did not get aboard the boat.*

tah tŏ-i kái-chhŭ, *left it at his house.*

ũ kái Siăng-tì chău--i, chià"-ôi tit-ũ, *there was a God who made it, and so it has existence.*

ngà kái-nâng kiá"-tiéh chí-tiâu-lou bŏi-kiá" chha-chhò, *even the fool that walks in this road can not make a mistake.*

i lì-liáu tī-hng, *he left the place.*

i bŭe-lái nŭn-kò kái sí-hâu, i bŭe-hiáu chò chí-kái khang-khŭe, *before he came to you he did not understand how to do this.*

tán-kàu úa kŭe-hái--liáu, jiên-ău hŭe-chŭn chià"-lái, *when I had already crossed the bay, afterwards the steamer then came, i.e. the steamer did not come until after I had crossed the bay.*

### Future.

In cases where the sense is obvious, distinguishing marks are omitted. At other times, words and phrases indicating future time are introduced, usually at the beginning of sentences, such as, ài", Chiang, Chiang ài". These often have associated with them other words, such as ū, sī, chiū, sūi-sī, hó, tiéh, eng-kai, &c.

Chiang-lái-jit; lái-jit, *at some future day.*

Chiang-lái, *in the future.*

āu-jit pit-ū, *at another day there certainly will be, &c.*

mé-nī chiū-ū, *next year there will be, &c.*

kàu-sng-siàu kái-jit-chí, *when the day of reckoning arrives, &c.*

kim f'-āu, *hereafter &c.*

ē-hūe; ē-túg; ē-chhiú, *another time.*

ē-pái; āu-pái, *another time; next time.*

uá Chiang-ài"-khò, *I will go.*

i ài"-khò, *he will go.*

uá ài"-seng-chí kái ki-hūe khò, *I will avail myself of this opportunity to go.*

uá ài"-bua-khò koh-lò--i, *I will go near and entreat him.*

i ài"-kau-chháp chò-bia"-tī, *they will join and be brothers.*

chheng-kua" ài"-siang-ngí, *all the nobles will deliberate.*

nín chheng-nang chhông-uá chiá, chiū-se", *ye all of you who follow me will live.*

m̄-chhông-uá chúá, chiū-sí, *those who don't follow me will die.*

uá sūn-lū chiū-sí, *I will obey you as what it is; i. e. I will obey you.*

hi-mō" Chiang-lái ôi-tit chò-tōa-kua", *hoped that hereafter he might be come a great mandarin.*

lū Chiang-lái kái-miá" sī-phang, *your future name will be fragrant.*

Chiang-lái sī-ū chò-nī", *in the future how will it be?*

lū kái-huân-ló ài"-pièn-chò hua"-hí, *your sorrow shall be turned into joy.*

chí kái lim-lim-liáu, uá chiū jip-lái sūa"-tā", *when these [your words] are barely finished I will come in and continue the conversation.*

bōi-sún-tiéh chék-tiáu thau-mō", *you will not be injured a hair of your head.*

lū chiè"-se" khí-chhù, sī khí-tiéh-chiéh m̄-sī khí-tiéh-thòu, *you in this way building a house, will be building with stone and not building with mud.*

hū kái tī-hng pit chiang-ài" ũ chhek-tiâu tōa-lou, *in that region there will certainly be one great highway.*

chiang-lái, chiang-ài" ũ chí-kái-sū, *in the future this matter will occur.*

pit ài"-ū, *there certainly will be.*

bōi-tiēh-tā", *there will be no mistake.*

i a sī hām-úa, úa m̄ ká" tho-si, *if he call me I will not dare to decline.*

hiá, ài" hiē"-chōi-nâng khū tī-kò-chhūc? *O, if you want so many men as that, where will you go to find them?*

Among the Chinese themselves, in common conversation, certain expressions are often heard, which indicate their mode of recognizing tense distinctions.

Thus, when in doubt as to the time when of the occurrence under consideration, one will ask:—

Chí kiá"-sū, khá-pat chò-kùe a-būe? *this particular affair, has it been yet done or not or,—*

Chí-kái-su, sī chōi" kái-sū, a-sī būe-pat chò kái-sū? *this occurrence,—is it a former occurrence, or has it not yet been done?*

To such questions answers may be given, as follows:—

chiá sī f'-keng kái-sū, *this is a matter past.*

chiá sī chò kùe kái-sū, *this is something already done.*

chí-kiá"-sū sī f'-keng chò kái-sū, *this affair is already done.*

chiá sī chōi" kái-sū, *this is a former [past] affair.*

chí-kiá"-sū pat chò--kùe, *this has been done.*

chí sī chiang-lái kái-sū, *this is a future matter.*

chí-kái-sū sī būe-pat chò--kái, *this is something that has not yet been done.*

chiá sī būe-chêng ũ--kái, *this is something that has not yet taken place.*

úa tà" f'-keng kái-sū, *I am speaking of things past.*

úa tà" būe-ū kái-sū, *I am speaking of things that have not yet taken place.*

úa soi"-tà" f'-keng kái-sū, jiēn-āu chiū-tà" chiang-lái kái-sū, *I will first speak of past things, after that, then (I will) speak of future things.*

### Some Usages of Syntax.

It may be of service to enumerate here a few of the more prominent usages of Chinese Syntax, as exhibited in the preceding pages.

I. There are no inflections of any kind to denote declension or conjugation.

II. Moods, tenses, cases, and degrees of comparison are learned from the connection, or formed by the aid of auxiliaries.

III. Many words are used, as occasion may require, without change of form, as verbs, nouns, and adjectives.

IV. A marked preference is shown for the use of active voice rather than passive voice forms of speech: — *He struck me*, rather than, *I am struck by him*.

V. In expressing the action of verbs, stress is often laid on the *stage* of the process rather than on the *time when* of the process.

VI. The frequency with which some one important word, — the object of the verb's action, — is put in the fore part of a sentence to begin with, is a marked feature in Chinese construction. *The oar — he broke it*, as well as, *he broke the oar*. *The box — he dropped it*. *The book — he read it*. *Wood — it is now a dollar a load*. *The sugar — he sold it*. *The horse — he led it away*.

VII. The mark of the Genitive (kâi) is placed *after* instead of *before* words, clauses, and sentences which have a Genitive sense. In English we would say, *The heat of the summer day*; *The tops of the distant mountains of Fokien*; *The custom of the people of ancient Rome*. The Chinese reverse the order and say, *The summer's day's heat*; *Fokien's distant mountain's tops*; *Ancient Rome's people's custom*.

VIII. Adjectives are constantly used as adverbs without any change of form.

IX. Prepositions follow, rather than precede, the associated nouns. In English we would say, *on the floor*, *in the house*, *through the gate*, *along side the wharf*, *over the door*, *under the canopy*. The Chinese would say, *the floor on*, *the house in*, *the gate through*, *the wharf along side of*, *the door over*, *the canopy under*.

X. The preposition "to", or its equivalent, before the dative is commonly omitted. Before the infinitive, "to" is not used at all. We would say, *He went to town to seek a friend*; *He went to Canton to see the mandarin*; *He went to Shanghai to sell sugar*; *He went to the sea to catch fish*; *He went to the field to bring*

grain. The Chinese would say, *He went*, or rather, *He go town seek friend*; *He go Canton see mandarin*; *He go Shanghai sell sugar*; *He go sea catch fish*; *He go field bring grain*.

XI. There is a habit in common conversation of omitting conjunctions in cases where in English their use would be indispensable. This is notably true of certain copulatives, as *kūa*, *pēng*, *i'-kíp*, *kah*, signifying *and*. We would say, *He bought sugar, tea, and spices*, *He went into the shop and got a saw*; *Father and mother*; *Teacher and pupil*. The Chinese drop the "*and*" and say, *He bought sugar, tea, spices*; *He went into the shop, got a saw*; *Father mother*; *Teacher pupil*.

XII. It is the peculiarity of certain interjections to be used after, instead of before, their associated words. The Chinese say, *John, Oh!* and not, *Oh, John*.

XIII. Connectives, or words which join together clauses or sentences, are numerous; but they are so frequently dropped, or hurried over in speech, that the attention of a learner is often severely taxed to keep track of them. Some few, however, refuse to be dispensed with. Such are *chū*, *then thereupon*; *where upon*, and *hiáu*, *finished, also*; *moreover*; *furthermore*. The reason, perhaps, why "*hiáu*" is so common, is the habit of summarizing some part of a previous sentence as a prelude to the next one, thus, *úa khí hūe-lón, khí hó-lán, úa chiū pū-pūg, I will build a fire, it being built, I will then cook rice*. But this may be shortened, *úa khí hūe-lón... hiáu, chiū pū-pūg, I will build a fire. ...finished, I will then cook rice* or as we would say, *and also cook rice*.

Of course, the minor parts of speech, — conjunctions, prepositions, &c., — act an important part here. Besides these, are various ejaculatory expressions which show that a break has been reached, and that a new sentence is about to begin, such as, *ta*, *now - now then*, *hó*, *well*, *hó-hiáu*, *very well, all right*; *so far so good*, *chié-se' hiáu*, *that being the way of it*; and *so then*, *hó-si*, *very well—and so*. And then, furthermore, there are sundry emphatic and terminal words, such as *lí i-i*; *a-a-a*, and intonations which are indescribable, and can be learned only from a man with a glib tongue. Other expressions, again, are correct enough in themselves, but are used in such a way as to make them no better than cant phrases. Still they help to mark off sentences. Thus one man will be constantly interlarding his speech with, *hó bōi*, *good or not?* Another will be repeating in his narrative with equal volubility, *tiéh a-ñ-tiéh*, *right or not right?* These ejaculations on the part of the narrator are polite bids for the listener's approval, but to which a response is not seriously expected.

XIV. Special idioms are very numerous. They must be learned, each one for itself. It will be found, however, after a time, that even in them there is something of method, and that they are susceptible of no little classification.

XV. Aside from special idioms and such inverted collocations as attend, say, the genitive sense (known by that ubiquitous man of all work in Chinese Syntax, — kài) the construction of ordinary sentences is really simple. The nouns, verbs, and adjectives which enter into a sentence, follow each other in an order which is both logical and chronological. It is the distribution of auxiliaries and particles which give the shades of meaning, and which require the most attention.

This can be shown best by taking an English sentence and stripping it of its auxiliaries until it bears some resemblance to a Chinese sentence.

*Buy land custom—engage middle man—hunt man want sell—have consultation—agree price—write white deed sign name—no can write—press thumb mark—go yamen—sue out red deed—mandarin impress seal—give you back—put away strong box—take care dampness, white ants, moths.*

This is a mere skeleton sentence. Yet its meaning is discoverable even as it is. The "substantive words" and the "live words" are all there. It is chiefly the auxiliaries or "empty words" that are wanting. When these are added and the sentence is padded out, there is no longer any lack of clearness.

*The custom in buying land is this. You must engage the services of a middle man who will hunt up a man who wants to sell. You then have a consultation and agree upon a price. This being done, he writes for you a white deed and signs his name to it. If he cannot write his name he must impress his thumb mark. You then go to a yamen and sue out a red deed. The mandarin impresses his seal and gives it back to you. You then take it home, put it away in your strong box, and have to be careful against dampness, white ants, and moths.*

---

### Growth of Sentences.

Any extended discussion of the structure of Chinese sentences would require a previous survey of Chinese modes of thought. It would be necessary to consider how they conceive their ideas, in order to understand why they express them as they do. For example, were a foreigner giving a description of a building, he would imagine himself on the outside looking inward. But a Chinaman would be more than likely to imagine himself in the inside looking outward. The result would lead to seeming contradiction. What one calls "the right" the other would speak of as "the left". Such a survey would be beyond the scope of these primary lessons, but a few illustrations may be given to show how sentences grow up, and crystallize into forms of speech around some axial word.

	chhâ.
	<i>Wood.</i>
âng	chhâ.
<i>Red</i>	<i>wood.</i>
tôi"	chhâ.
<i>Hard</i>	<i>wood.</i>
phâ"	chhâ.
<i>Brash</i>	<i>wood.</i>
	chhâ tôi".
	<i>The wood is hard.</i>
chhâ	phâ".
	<i>The wood is brittle.</i>
bói	chhâ.
<i>Buy</i>	<i>wood.</i>
	chhâ bói háu.
	<i>Wood is bought.</i>
lòi	chhâ.
<i>Split</i>	<i>wood.</i>
	chhâ lòi hó.
	<i>Wood is split.</i>
ãi"-khù	lòi chhâ.
<i>Will go</i>	<i>split wood.</i>
	chhâ lòi-hó--liáu, ná chiũ-lài.
	<i>The wood when split, I then will come.</i>



chang chhâ lâi-chò.  
*Take wood and come make it.*  
 chhâ chò--kâi.  
*Wood(en) made one.*  
 chhâ chò--kâi oh-chhûe.  
*Wood(en) ones are hard to find.*  
 hó khù-chhûe chhâ chò--kâi.  
*Go find a wood(en) made one.*  
 chhâ chò--kâi bô-hiè"-nâi.  
*Wood(en) made ones are not very lasting.*  
 chhâ chò--kâi ôi-lîn chò-tit.  
*Wood(en) one will answer.*  
 hám i-bói chhâ chò--kâi.  
*Told him to buy a wood made one.*  
 chûn khù Sít-lát bói chhâ lâi Sùá"-thâu bói.  
*The boat went to Singapore*  
*and brought lumber to Swatow to sell.*  
 i bói liáu chhâ ài" lâi-tèng chék-chiah-chûn.  
*He has bought lumber and is going to nail (make)*  
*a boat.*  
 chhâ chò--kâi iá"-kùe thih chò--kâi.  
*A wood(en) one is better than an iron*  
*one.*  
 chhâ kâi bô nâng-ài".  
*A wood(en) one nobody wants.*  
 ài" pa-lói-chûn bô-mih tòi" chhâ.  
*I want to repair the boat but*  
*have no hard wood.*  
 bói-bô chhâ.  
*No wood to buy.*  
 chhûe chhâ chhûe-bô.  
*Hunted wood and found none.*

chò.  
*To do; to be.*  
 chò sū.  
*To do business; to effect something.*  
 chò khang-khùe.  
*To do work.*



- chò hó-hó.  
*Be good.*
- lŭ chò mih-kái?  
*You are doing what?*
- ài<sup>n</sup> chò a m̄?  
*Will you do it or not?*
- m̄-ká<sup>n</sup> chò.  
*Does not dare do (it).*
- m̄-pat-tò chò.  
*Never did it, i.e. don't know how.*
- ài<sup>n</sup> chò chiū-chò.  
*If you are going to do it, then do it.*
- chò sŭ khiàng-khiàng.  
*Does things well.*
- chò sŭ kua<sup>n</sup>-chià<sup>n</sup>.  
*Does things correctly.*
- chò tit-lái.  
*Doing can come, i.e. can be done.*
- chò ui-seng.  
*To be a doctor.*
- m̄-chai chò pē.  
*Don't know to be a father, i.e. unfatherly.*
- lŭ hó chò náng.  
*You be a man.*
- m̄-chai hó chò-nl<sup>n</sup> chò.  
*I don't know what it would be*  
*well to do.*
- chiè<sup>n</sup>-se<sup>n</sup> chò m̄ chò-tit.  
*To do that way will not answer.*
- i tō chò muèh-kiā<sup>n</sup>.  
*He is at the making of something, i.e. he is making something.*
- chò piên-piên.  
*Made all ready (to hand.)*
- chò cháp-kang.  
*Do mixed work [coolie].*
- chò liáu chài-chò.  
*Having done it do it again, or did it again.*
- chò lái hó.  
*Made to come, good, i.e. well done.*
-

- lâi.  
*To come ; to come forth.*  
 i bue lâi.  
*He has not yet come.*  
 i m-ká" lâi.  
*He dare not come.*  
 i ài" lâi.  
*He will come.*  
 i ài" lâi a-bô ?  
*Will he come or not ?*  
 nǒ-sa"-nâng lâi háu.  
*Two or three men have come already.*  
 lâi liáu ũ nǒ-sa"-nâng.  
*Have come already some two or three persons.*  
 hó lâi.  
*May come.*  
 lâi hó a-m-hó ?  
*To come is it well or not ?*  
 hó lâi a-m-hó ?  
*Is it well to come or not well ?*  
 êng-úa lâi a-mién ?  
*Is it necessary for me to come or not ?*  
 úa êng lâi a-mién ?  
*Do I need to come or not ?*  
 úa lâi, êng a-mién ?  
*For me to come, is it necessary or not ?*  
 hàm-i lâi.  
*Tell him to come.*  
 tiéh lâi.  
*Must come.*  
 tǒ mē"-hng lâi.  
*In the evening come.*  
 khiéh tâng-pôa" lâi.  
*Bringing a brass tray he comes, [making a present].*  
 khiéh lâi.  
*Take it and come.*  
 lâi mé-mé.  
*Come quickly.*  
 tǒ hú-kò lâi.  
*From thence came.*

bién-hîn chhut lâi.

*Manifested forth.*

se'-chhut lâi.

*Issued forth.*

in-tâng chhut lâi ũ húc-iām.

*From the smoke-stack issued forth a blaze.*

tán-kàu i lâi.

*Wait till he comes.*

i chiū lâi.

*He then will come, or he then came.*

khù-liáu lâi.

*Has gone and come again.*

i chiē'-chhi lâi.

*He has been to market, and come back.*

i lâi kú-ūa-hûe.

*He came several times.*

i lâi bói-sang-ôi liáu chiū-khū.

*He came and bought a pair of shoes  
and then went.*

i lâi khiēh pōu-thâu, ài' khū chām-  
chhā.

*He came to get an axe, intending to go  
and cut wood.*

i lâi hàm ũa khū chò khang-khūe.

*He came to call me to go and do work.*

tō hâng--kò ũ sī-mih nāng lâi a-bô?

*At the hong has anybody come or not?*

lū khū kiē chék-kài sai-pē lâi lêng-gūa pa-lói chí-kài-tháng.

*You go and call a mechanic to come, and agwan mend this tub.*

lū khū kiē chék-kài sai-pē lâi têng kàu só-thâu tō chí-kài mûg.

*You go and call a mechanic to come, and nail a lock on this door.*

i lí ka-kí kái-sū, lí hó--liáu,

jiēn-āu i chiū lâi.

*he is attending to his own affairs,*

*when he has attended to them*

*then he will come.*

tán kú-chāi, thóí'-kí' bô-muēh,

āu thóí'-kí' tō hūg-hūg lâi ũ nō-nāng khiā-bé.

*Waited a long time, and saw*

*nothing, afterwards he saw a*

*great way off, coming, two men on horseback.*

- nâng.  
*A man.*  
 Tiê-chiu nâng.  
*A Tie-chiu man.*  
 phg-tĩ nâng.  
*A native, man.*  
 chhong-mêng kái nâng.  
*A clear-minded man.*  
 nâng chhong-mêng.  
*The man is clear-minded.*  
 ũ nâng jíp--lái.  
*There was a man came in.*  
 jíp lái ũ nâng.  
*Coming in there was a man.*  
 ũ nâng lái, ũ-nâng-khũ.  
*There are men coming and men going.*  
 hók-ũ nâng lái bói-muêh.  
*If there should be a man coming to buy things.*  
 phn-khiông nâng tở-gũa khut-chiáh.  
*A poor man is outside begging.*  
 uá thối-bô nâng tở.  
*I saw no man there.*  
 kdu nâng lái-ta" hêng-lí.  
*hired a man to come and carry his luggage.*  
 i nâng m̄-hiáu-lí.  
*That man does not understand reason.*  
 chf-kò kái nâng m̄-chai kui-kũ.  
*This place's people don't know custom, i. e. good manners.*  
 sòk-khoi hiê"-pôi" kái nâng.  
*Belonging to the other side of*  
*the river's people.*  
 kiau nâng pē"-pē"-iē".  
*As compared with people all the same, i. e. like other*  
*people, or, like a human being.*  
 tở kak nâng ka-kí chú-l.  
*For each man himself to decide.*  
 chhêng-tng-sa" kái nâng tiêh-sái-chí", chôi-kùe pát-nâng.  
*The wearing long gown's people must pay more than other people.*

sái.

*To cause; to send; to effect; to use.*

sái kàu.

*To cause that; to bring to pass.*

sái i-khù.

*Send him to go, i.e. send him.*

hó sái êng.

*Suitable to make use of.*

khut-nâng sái êng.

*Be by people used, i.e. be used by people.*

sī i-só sái kái.

*That which he caused; or sent.*

sī thi" só sái kái.

*That which heaven caused to come about.*

ài" sái bô-êng.

*Wish to use it but it is of no use.*

chí-kái-ngûn oh sái.

*This silver is hard to pass.*

chí-kái-ngûn sái m̄-khù.

*This silver won't pass.*

sái chiū-liáu.

*Caused; effected; brought to pass.*

bô-chi" hó sái.

*No money to spend.*

chí" sái bue-liáu m̄-khéng khù chò

khang-khùe.

*His money not being all spent, he is not willing to go and work.*

i m̄-ká"-khù nan-in bô-chi" hó sái.

*He dare not go because he has**no money that he may spend.*

a-sī chí" hó sái i chiū-ká".

*If he has money that he may spend he then will dare to.*

chí-kái-ngûn hó sái a m̄-hó?

*This money, will it pass or not?*

If the learner finds this method of treating words advantageous, he can extend it to auxiliaries and particles such as, *chiū*, then; there-upon; *tiéh*, accomplished; effected; *hó*, good; well; may, and any others.

### Bits of Description.

After acquiring a number of simple sentences, sufficient for his immediate use, the learner can do no better than give attention to bits of colloquial description as given by natives. A few specimens are here subjoined. Though brief, they will serve to show how the Chinese proceed from one thought to another in common place things of every day life. They are not made up, but are fragments of *actual* descriptions taken down from native lips exactly as they were spoken. Too much cannot be said in favor of this method of learning Chinese, for it enables one to follow a Chinaman in his thoughts, and furnishes the learner with the nouns and verbs appropriate to the topic in hand. Colloquial portions of the Scripture narrative which already exist in the missions at Swatow, both in Chinese character and Romanized, furnish a large supply. In addition to those, the pupil would do well to gather abundant stores of his own about common place topics from common people. The descriptions thus heard may not always be cultured in style, and would receive some trimming at the hands of a scholarly graduate, which should be taken into account. But they will be clear and intelligible colloquial as used and understood by the million.

In the sentences that follow, notice, for example, the peculiar and frequent use of "chí-kái", *this one, or this*, or as here used, *the*. It brings the noun to which it is attached, into a little more prominence than it would otherwise have.

**Cooking Rice.**—Soi" phah-sng jiéh-chôi-nâng êng-chiáh jiéh-chôi bí, *just consider how many men will need to eat how much rice*, jiên âu, khò chhah-bí, *then go and take up some rice*;—êng kái thág, hók-eng kái-uá", *use a measure(full) or use a bowl (full)*, chiè-i sì siè" só-chiáh, jiéh-chôi, *according to what they usually eat, (just) so much*.—Bí—lòh-chí kái-thág, *the rice*, put it down in the bucket,—hók-puah, *or—earthenware vessel*;—êng-chún, lài-sói, *use water, come and wash it*;—lòh khò kiè-chò-chun, *that which is put down in, is called water*.—Sói-âu, thín--chhut-lái-kai, kiè chò-phun, *after it is washed, that which is poured out is called "phun" (rinsings)*;—ié chheng-khih kái-chúi lài-chò ám, *dip clean water in order to make "ám" (congee)*.

Khí-ki-húe tở huang-lòu, *build a fire in the furnace*, -hók tở chàu, *or in the fireplace*;—soi-eng lán-ló chhâ-phùe-thiu, *first use a few shavings*,—hók-chúa ùn lán-iú, *or paper dipped in a little oil*,—hók-ēng chū-lài-húe, *or use matches*,—hók-eng chúa-bûe, *or use a (burnt) paper end*;—pàng chí-ki-húe tở chhâ-phùe-thiu, i chiū-tòh, *put the fire near to the shavings, and then they will ignite*;—tòh ău, chiū khúeh-chhâ, *after it is lighted, collect (some) wood around it*,—hók lóh-thôa, *or charcoal*;—lôh-thôa" mài-kbah-chôi, *in putting on charcoal, do not have too much*,—kbah-chôi chiū khut i ip-tiân, *if you have too much it will be smothered by it*,—ēng chí-kài-si" lái-iă", *use a fan to blow it*,—sái i chhuan-tòh, *and make it wholly ignite*.

Jiēn-ău phō pŋg-ue, *then, bring in your two hands the rice pot*,—lôh-khū-pô, *put it on to boil*;—pô-kàn i-sék, *and boil until it is done*,—hók-si chò-mûe", *or is made into congee*.—Phō-khí lái pàng--kò, *take it up and put it there (on the table)*;—tán i iáu-chhîn, *wait till it is some what cool*,—chò-ni khut i thng--tiēh kbah-sie, *what is the use of being scalded by it (if) too hot?*—Ēng mûe"-tlih lái-thi", *use a rice ladle to dip it out*,—pàng i ka ki kài-ús", *and put it in his own rice bowl*.

Hók-si chò-pŋg, *if it is to be "pŋg" (grained rice)*,—ēng kài-kám, *use a cover*,—lái-tò chhut-ám, *to drain off the liquid part*,—pàng--kò khut i iáu-chhîn, *put it there to let it cool*.

**House Building.**—Tbâu-soi" liú-ti-kha, *first you dig a foundation*,—jiēn-ău chiū cheng ti kha, *then pound the foundation*,—kàu cheng ti-kha hó-liáu, *when you have pounded the foundation all right*;—hók ũ-uàng, li-i-i, i thūn-kôi" phou-pê", *perhaps there will be some men, ah, they will fill it up and level it off*,—háu chiū khiă si-kak kài-sai, *this done, stand upright the four corner boards*,—háu chiū hē pui-pang, *this being done you will then place in position the pounding boards*;—hó — chiū cheng chhiê"; cheng-chhiê" hó-liáu, *when all right then pound the wall*; *when the wall is pounded*,—chiū pài-ê" tēng-kak, *then place the rafters and nail on the slats*,—pài-ê" tēng-kak hó-liáu, *when the rafters are nailed and the slats are laid*,—thou-kang kài sai pē chiū-lām chhū-téng, *the mason will lay on in plaster the tiles*;—hām hó-liáu, *the tile laying being completed*,—chiū bāk-kang kài sai-pē lái-chiă" theng-mûg, *then the carpenter will come and fit the windows and doors*,—háu chiū lái-pôi" kuah-hue, *then will plaster*

*the inside;—hók-ũ lâu-téng chiũ-téng lâu-pang, if there is an upper story then nail on the floor boards;—bô-lâu-téng, ău, li, if no upstairs, afterwards, ah,—phah-hue-tiã, hók-phou-chng, pound a chunam floor, or lay down tiles;—lâu-pang têng--hó--liáu, when the floor is nailed down,—chiũ-téng buân-thien, then nail on the ceiling,—ău sueh-hue-chúi, after that you wash it with lime water;—ài"-sueh hún-chiáu-sek, some wash it dove color,—ũ-nâng sueh-pêh, some wash it white,—ũ-nâng sueh-lâm, some wash it blue;—mng kah-theng ài"-iũ, the doors and windows you will paint,—lú ài"-lêk a-hó, if you want green, very well, ài"-pêh a-hó, if you want white, very well,—sì-tô-lũ ka-kĩ siê"-ài", it is as you yourself think you like it.*

---

**Making Sugar.**—Soi" tah-thng-liâu, *first put up a sugar house,—ău khiã-chià-ká, then set up the cane crushers;—khiã-hó--liáu, when all done,—chiũ-lài ká-chiã, then come and grind the cane;—chiã kái-chap chiũ-chũ chò-thng, the juice of the cane you will then boil to make sugar;—liáu chiũ ié-lóh thng-lâu, this done, you then dip it into the sugar pots;—liáu chiũ lái-huang-thôu, then you spread clay over it,—huang ũ-ngôu-jit, hók-ũ chap-jit, when it has been covered five days, or perhaps ten days,—thng-chúi chiũ kiã"-ehheng-chhó, the molasses will have run off completely;—ău khap-chhut--lài phák, afterwards pour it out and dry it in the sun;—phák-liáu chiũ lái-khà-chbùi, after it has been dried you then proceed to pound it fine;—khà-chhùi-liáu chiũ chuan-lóh chhiéh-pau, you then enclose it in a straw bag,—chài-lài Sùa"-thâu bói, and carry it by boat to Swatow to sell.*

---

**Ploughing.**—Lôi-chhân kái-nâng soi" phah-sng, *the ploughman first decides (what he is going to do);—tô-i ka-kĩ kái-koi"-thâu chiũ-khiã chí kái-lôi, on his own shoulders he takes the plough,—khũ-gũ liâu khan chék-chiah-gũ, he goes to the cow house and leads off an ox,—gũ-chũ kái-nâng kàu-chí kái-chhân, the ox owner on arriving at the field,—lôi chiũ hiah-lóh-chhân, puts the plough down in the field;—soi" Chiang chí-kái gũ-ta"-uân kù-tô-gũ kái-koi"-thâu, he first takes the yoke and puts it on the shoulders of the ox,—kù-tô hâu chiũ lái-sái, when it is on then*



---

*he goes to work [lit. use]; — sái-hiah pàng-gô khù chiáh-chháu, when you stop work, you unloose the ox to go and eat grass &c.*

---

**A Chinaman's Toilet.**—Môg-khí cháu khí-lái, i chiū khí-tòh-lôu, *in the morning when he gets up he builds a fire,*—lái pû-chúi, pû-kàu chúi-sie, *comes and heats some water, when it is heated,*—tò-lôh mîn-phûn, *pours it out into the wash-bowl,*—khiêh kò mîn-pòu lóh-khù ùn-tâm, *takes a towel and dipping it in, wets it,*—chiū tẽ-ta, *then wrings it dry,*—khiêh lái-sói-mîn, *takes it and washes his face;*—sói-hó chúi chiū tò-tiâu, *when it is done pours out the water,*—mîn-phûn chiū pói-lìn-túg khut i lâ-ta, *and the basin he turns upside down to let it dry,*—mîn-pòu phuáh khut-i lâ-ta, *and the towel he spreads out and lets it dry,*—liáu chiū chheng-chhó, *and all is complete.*

---

### Abbreviations.

Colloquial speech abounds in abbreviated expressions. There is a great disposition to drop parts of well known sentences and to make the remaining parts do duty for the whole. Sometimes the middle part is left out and the two ends are fused together into a new compendious expression which is current coin in every day speech. This is conspicuous in counting. It is called *tà'-kán*, saying it short, and such expressions are called, *kán-niap kái-ue*.

<i>jī-cháp</i>	contracted to	<i>jiáp, twenty.</i>
<i>jī-cháp-jī,</i>	„	<i>jīh-jī, twenty-two.</i>
<i>sa'-cháp,</i>	„	<i>sáp, thirty.</i>
<i>sa'-cháp-sì.</i>	„	<i>sáp'-sì, thirty-four.</i>
<i>sì-cháp,</i>	„	<i>siáp, forty.</i>
<i>ngōu-cháp,</i>	„	<i>nguáp, fifty.</i>
<i>lák-cháp,</i>	„	<i>láp, sixty.</i>
<i>chhit-cháp,</i>	„	<i>chhi-áp, seventy.</i>
<i>poi-h-cháp,</i>	„	<i>póp, eighty.</i>
<i>káu-cháp,</i>	„	<i>káp, ninety.</i>
<i>chék-peh,</i>	„	<i>peh, one hundred.</i>
<i>chí-kái</i>	„	<i>chúá, this one.</i>
<i>hú-kái,</i>	„	<i>hiá, that one.</i>
<i>ũ a-bô?</i>	„	<i>ũ bô, have or not?</i>
<i>bô ôi,</i>	„	<i>bôí, cannot.</i>
<i>ài'-khù a-m̃?</i>	„	<i>ài'-khù m̃? want to go or not?</i>
<i>ài' a m̃-ài'?</i>	„	<i>ài' m̃? want it or not?</i>
<i>i-kái,</i>	„	<i>iá, his.</i>
<i>lú-kái,</i>	„	<i>lú-a, yours.</i>
<i>hó a-m̃-hó,</i>	„	<i>hó-m̃ (or) lóm, is it well or not?</i>
<i>mién-êng,</i>	„	<i>mién, no need.</i>
<i>chiè'-se',</i>	„	<i>chiè', like this; so.</i>
<i>hiè'-se',</i>	„	<i>hiè', like that.</i>
<i>khù-tí-kò,</i>	„	<i>khù tí-d, where going, or gone?</i>
<i>tō chí-kò,</i>	„	<i>tō chí-d, here.</i>
<i>tō hú-kò,</i>	„	<i>tō hú-d, there.</i>
<i>chò mih-kái,</i>	„	<i>chò-mih, what are you doing?</i>
<i>ũ mih-sū,</i>	„	<i>mih-sū, what is the matter?</i>
<i>ũ mih-kái,</i>	„	<i>mih-kái, what is it?</i>
<i>lú chiáh a-būe?</i>	„	<i>chiáh--būe? have you eaten yet?</i>
<i>hó-lái khù-chiáh,</i>	„	<i>lái-chiáh, let us go and eat.</i>

lái ài'-chò-ní? contracted to	lái-chò-ní, what did you come for?
„ „ „ „	„ „ „ „ what do you want?
chò-ní m̄-chiè'-se'?	„ hō-m̄ chiè'-se', what not so?
kiè sī-mih-sū?	„ kiè sīm-sū, what did you call (me)?
„ „ „ „	„ „ „ „ what are you calling out for?
chiè'-se' chò-ní m̄-tùi?	„ chò-m̄-tùi, why is it not correct?
chò-ní bōi-tit?	„ chò-bōi, why can you not?
chiè'-se' chò hó mē?	„ chiè' chò, hó-m̄, that way of doing it, is it well?
hū-kái sī-bān,	„ hū-sī, that time.
hū-kái jīt-chí,	„ hū-jīt, that day.
àn-chiè'-se',	„ chiè'-se', according to that.
tà'-sī mih-ūe?	„ tà'-mih-ūe, what are you saying?
chò-ní'-hó?	„ chò-hó, why is it good? Why so?
chí kái sī-sī mih-muēh?	„ chí sīm-muēh, what thing is this?
chò-ní òi-tit?	„ chài-tit, how can it be?
chò-ní se'-iē'?	„ chài-se', what manner or fashion?
chí-chiè'-nāng,	„ chiè'-nāng, these men.
hū-hiè'-nāng,	„ hiè'-nāng, those men.
chha-m̄-to,	„ chham-to, differing not much.
tóu khùn-chāi,	„ khùn-chāi, very hungry.
chhông-kóu chí-kàu ta' lái,	„ chhông-lài, from of old down to the present.
lū chò-ní-tà'?	„ chò-ní-tà', } what do you say?
	„ chò-ní-tà', }
lū tō chò-mih-sū?	„ chò-sū, what are you doing?
lū ài'-khū tī-kò?	„ ài'-tī-d, where are you going?
lū tiāng-sī-lái?	„ lū tiāng-lài, when did you come?
sū f'-keng sēng--liáu,	„ sū sēng--liáu, the matter is accomplished already.
chiē'-Hú khòng-kò,	„ Hú khòng, went up to the Hu city to bring a suit.
lòh-Sé' khòng-kò,	„ Sé' khòng, gone down to Canton to bring a suit.
chiū,	„ chū, then; thereupon.
chiang,	„ chang, to take; make use of.

### Slang.

A lesson in slang is certainly not a legitimate part of grammar. But it may not be amiss for a learner to know that such a thing as slang not only exists, but that it is abundantly used. Every trade and occupation has its own slang best known to its own fraternity. In the market especially, trading operations are carried on between dealers and brokers by means of an extensive vocabulary of slang, used when occasion requires. Middle men who introduce a customer will conclude a bargain with the shop keeper about their own percentage, by the use of slang, in the presence of the country buyer himself who may not have the least idea of what is going on. Other slang, again, is well understood by everybody, and serves as a vehicle for Chinese humor, drollery, satire, and ridicule. Words of this kind are called "phah-tse", which may here be rendered, *slang*. A few specimens are appended.

For example, fish dealers, instead of ordinary numerals, in discussing prices among themselves, use *kín, nãi, chong, su, ma*, which are substitutes for *chék, nǒ, sa, sì, ngòu, one, two, three, four, five*. This is called, *hũ phah, fish slang*.

Cattle dealers have another set from one up to ten,—*thien* (1), *hiã* (2), *phêng* (3), *kháu* (4), *chúi* (5), *lêng* (6), *bún* (7), *put* (8), *kí* (9), *khai* (10). This is called, *gũ phah, cattle slang*.

*phah huan-nâng-chhèng*, to shoot a foreign gun, i. e. to smoke opium.  
*khũ-sa"-tiám*, gone for three drops, i. e. off for a drink.

*phah-chháu-chhiéh*, to beat the mat, i. e. to go to sleep.

*pí chháu-chhiéh-tou*, to measure the length of the mat, i. e. to go to sleep.

*lêng-sí-cheng*, to push along the clock, i. e. to carry a sedan chair.

*sa"-chiah-chhiú*, three-handed, i. e. thievish.

*ou lâu-tiã*, the black mandarin, i. e. a coffin.

*sí-kue-thâu*, a water melon head, i. e. a Buddhist priest.

*kúe-lóih*, a peaked hat, i. e. a man's house.

*a-kòu-g-iã*, the esquire, i. e. a leper.

*kò-chún-kia"*, to row a small boat, i. e. wabbling gait.

*pũg-loi*, a rice scoop, i. e. stiff armed.

*tié"-máng-tiè"*, spreading a mosquito net, i. e. sporting a long gown.

*tàu hun-tàng-thâu*, putting on pipe stoppers, i. e. wearing stockings.

*síu phòu-chou*, collecting shop rents, i. e. a fellow begging from door to door.

- ou-bí, *black rice, i.e. opium.*  
 tak-sat-bó, *cracking vermin, i.e. a tailor at work.*  
 bōi muéh-chiáh, *selling food, i.e. a fellow in a cangue.*  
 hūe-sie-sua", *burning off the mountain, i.e. getting the head shaved.*  
 i khū-chón-ke, *he has gone to the home of his fathers, i.e. he is dead.*  
 i kiá--tāg-lōu *he has entered on a long journey, i.e. a man just dead.*  
 i pha-tèng, *he has dropped anchor, i.e. a fellow fallen into the water.*  
 kim-hōu-sín, *golden flies, i.e. fops.*  
 chúí-ngiáu-chhū, *water rats, i.e. boat thieves.*  
 tòa-sū-chu, *wearing an official decoration, i.e. one with a chain on his neck.*  
 chúí-pang-toi, *river bank caved in, i.e. a wrecked fortune.*  
 kùe ou-chúí, *to cross the black water, i.e. to go to foreign parts.*  
 chhō-tōa-jī, *making big characters, i.e. a drunken fellow staggering.*  
 khui tū-nék-phōu, *to open a pork shop, i.e. one who has no business and has to board himself.*  
 kap-pō soih chhōg-kha, *bracing the legs of a frog, i.e. a boaster; futile endeavor.*  
 ngiáu-chhū kè cháu-kiá", *rats marrying off their daughters, i.e. people whispering in an under tone.*  
 òi lâu-phōa, *afraid of the old woman, i.e. one who is afraid to act for himself.*  
 chh-ke", *tongue weaving, i.e. teaching school.*  
 cheng-seng-peh, *planting banyans, i.e. letting the hair grow.*  
 tiū mién-chí'-chhū, *living in a free dwelling, i.e. in jail.*  
 bōi-hūe-thúi, *selling hams, i.e. truculent kneeling.*  
 mò-kúi", *looking up, i.e. a man who has hung himself.*  
 chiáu-làng, *bird cages, i.e. trousers.*  
 chúí-koi-phōe, *a frog skin, i.e. a jacket.*  
 lâu-chhiū-thâu, *an old stump, i.e. an old man.*  
 phok-siau, *saltpetre, i.e. a hot tempered man.*  
 pàng-húe-chí", *shooting fire arrows, i.e. breeding discord.*  
 pē-mīn, *scratch the face, i.e. give offense.*  
 chūa nih-mák, *a snake winking its eyes, i.e. a big story.*  
 kúi kùe-khoi, *a devil crossing a river* " " "  
 sa" pau-húe, *fire in the jacket, i.e. trouble.*

Analogous to the preceding, is a species of sign language which is extensively used. This, by some, is called, *chhiú-gú*, *hand talk*. A man is said to use *hand talk*, *eng-chhiú-gú*; or, to use his hand to make signs, *ēng-chhiú lâi-pí*.

The thumb held up, signifies, *number one; the best; important*.

The little finger held up, signifies, *the least; insignificant*.

The fore-finger stroking along the mouth, signifies, *eating*.

The fore-finger stroking along the head, signifies, *getting shaved*.

Three fingers closed, the thumb and the little finger held up and on a level, signifies, *asleep*.

Three fingers closed, the thumb up, and the little finger horizontal, signifies, *sitting down*.

Two, three, or more fingers held up, signifies, *counting*.

Three fingers closed, the little finger placed on the table, and the thumb brought gradually down to the surface, signifies, *submission; homage; obeisance; truculence*.

The hand stretched out, palm downwards, and fingers moving towards the body, signifies, *beckoning to come*.

The same motion with the palm upward, indicates, *begging, or asking for money, or bribes*.

The fore-finger held up and curved, signifies, *death*.

The hand drawn across the throat, signifies, *decapitation*.

The hand slipped behind or down by the side, signifies, *money taking; bribery*.

### Various Questions.

m̄ng-tap, *question and answer.*

m̄ng-lâi m̄ng-khū, *asking to and fro.*

chék-nâng m̄ng, chék-uâng lín, *one asks and another answers; dialogue.*

hó--mē *is it well? Will it do?*

hó a-m̄-hó *will it do or not?*

chiè"-se" hó--mē *will that do?*

lín-tap tà", chiè"-se" chò, ká" ôi a-bôi, *replied saying,—to do like that, can he or not?*

lū kī" chóng-tok chāi-tit ká", *how dare you face the governor?*

eng-kai chò sī-mih-sū, chià" ôi-tit phêng-an, *what must needs be done in order that there may be peace?*

ài" phêng-an eng-kai chò mih-sū, *if you want peace what is necessary to do?*

lū chiè"-jīt só-chò kái-sū, sī bue-chêng kái-úa tà"--mē, *that which you did the other day, is there something that you have not told me of?*

lū khá-sī bô-ài" káng-úa tà", *is it so that you don't want to tell me?*

lū phah-sng ài"-chhiá" tī-kái ui-seng lâi, *what doctor have you decided to call?*

lū chai ôi-tit chiap i-kái-úi a-bôi, *do you know whether you can fill his place or not?*

lū hô-sī-chai chí-kái-sū, *how did you come to know this?*

lū chāi-tit tsai chí-kái-sū, *how can you know this matter?*

lū chò-nī ũ hiè"-chôi ngún, *how did you come to have so much money?*

chò-bôi, *why can I not?*

lū chai-mêng a, *do you know clearly?*

chí-kái-sū sī sók tī-tiàng kái-sū, *this matter pertains to whom? Whose business is it?*

chí-kái-tà" sī sók tō tī-tiàng, *this responsibility pertains to whom?*

úa ũ-ue kàu-sū lū-thia", hó--mē, *I have something to state to you, may I?*

úi-mih-sū kám-siā i, *what shall I thank him for?*

ū-sū hó khut-i kám-siā--mē, *is there anything for which I should be thanked by him?*

chò-nī ôi chiè" mêng-péh, *how should it come to be so clear?*

ài" chò-nī chià"-hó, *how should it be properly done?*

i náng se"-lâi chāi-se"-iē", *what sort of a looking man is he?*

ôitit-tiéh sī-mih-siē", *what reward can he have?*

chí-kái hie'-lí se' tō tī-kò, *where does this village lie?*  
 lú chò-ní put-sek put-ti, *how is it that you don't comprehend?*  
 lú sī ài'-sàng sè'-miā, ā, *do you want to lose your life?*  
 lú mǎu'-sī, lú khá-ká' a-m-ká', *to risk death, dare you or not?*  
 lú ài'-chhūan--mē, *do you want to be complete?*  
 ài'-siá-tiāu ke-ngiáp, ā, *do you want to sacrifice your property?*  
 lú òi-tit-tiēh kúá'-jién káng-i sie-thāi a-bô, *can you really fight with him or not?*  
 lú ká'-mài'-khū sūn-hók i, *dare you refuse to submit to him?*  
 hó-pàng tī-kái-ūi, *where shall I put it?*  
 hó-chò-ní siu-sip, *how shall I arrange it?*  
 ài'-siu pàng-tī-kò, *where shall I put it?*  
 huân-ū jiēh-hng, *how much farther is it?*  
 ēng-thiap jiēh-chōi chià'-kàu-chok, *how much must I add to make it suffice?*  
 mng-gūa táng-chá jiáng, khá-sī-lú a-m-sī, *was that you making a racket outside the door a bit ago?*  
 lú jiáng-mih-sū, *what are you making a noise about?*  
 i jiáng-tóu khùn a-m-sī, *he is making a fuss because he is hungry, isn't he?*  
 nín--tang tī-tiāng-ōi, *who among you are able to?*  
 chí-chūn hàm--uá, sī-lú a-m-sī, *was it you calling out for me just now?*  
 lú bōi sī-hàm-uá lí-khui ka-kī tī-hng, *are you not (virtually) telling me to leave my own country?*  
 m-chai chí-kiá'-muēh khá-háh-lú ēng--mē, *I do not know whether this will suit your use or not?*  
 chiáh-láu, m-chai chiē-nguân a-bōi, *when I have eaten it [medicine] I do not know whether I will be as at the first or not?*  
 ēng sī-mih-sū chià'-hua'-bí, *what will please him?*  
 lú mng-chò-ní, *what are you asking about?*  
 lú mng sī-mih-kái, .. " " " " ?  
 lú mng sī-mih-sū, .. " " " " ?  
 uá chò-ní hó-khut-lú mng, *why should I be questioned by you?*  
 ū sī-mih-iē' hó-chò kái-huap, lú khá-pat a-m-pat, *what kind of a way would do as a rule,—do you know or not?*  
 lú khá-it-tit hū-tàng-sī lú só-tà', *do you remember what you said at the time?*



ôi-tit lâi tiêh pí Chiang-lâi kái-hok a-bôi, *can it compare with future blessedness or not?*

kiè-i chò--háu, chò-ni-mài, *after you told him to make it, why did you not want it?*

kàu-ti kò khut-i liáh tiêh, *whereabouts was it that he was caught?*  
chí-kài thi"-tí, chò-ni ôi-tit-ũ, *these heavens and earth, how do they come to be?*

khá-m̄ eng-tng tiêh, *ought you not to?*

sí-mih-sín hó-pài, *what God ought to be worshipped?*

nâng ũ-chũe chò-ni hó-buah-tiâu, *if man has sin how can it be cancelled?*

lú phah-sng-lú ka-kí ũ-chũe a-bô, *do you think you have sinned or not?*

lú siê" pài-Siāng-ti ôi-tit sì-kan sí-mih-hó, *do you think that by worshipping God you will get any worldly good?*

uá eng-kai kám-siā i a-mién, *ought I to thank him or not?*

ē-jit huân-iáu ài"-khù pài-chóu-chong--mē, *in the future will you still go and worship your ancestors?*

lú tóg-khù pài-phô-sat, ũ sí-mih-chũe--bô, *if you go back and worship idols, will there be any sin or not?*

ũ-sí-mih sín-mēng sie-hũ, *is there any god to help? What god helps?*

sí-lú ka-kí ôi a-bôi, *can you of yourself do this?*

lú siê" eng-kai chò-ni, *what do you think ought to be done?*

ũ-sí-mih hó--chhù, *what is the use of it?*

lú ũ jiéh-chôi-hùe *how old are you?*

chí-kái hie"-lí sí-sók tí-kái-kúi", *this village belongs to what district?*

chí-kái-sū, tō-chiē"-būn soi" ũ-kì-lók a-bô, *this matter—is it previously recorded?*

chiē"-būn ũ-tà" chí-kái-miā a-bô, *is this name found in the previous part of the book?*

kūn-jit kái-kuang-kéng chāi-se", *how are things these days?*

siàu-bák tit a-būe, *is the account settled yet?*

ē-jit sí khá-hó lái-hiām pē-bó--mē, *in after days shall he come and blame his father and mother?*

khá-m̄ chhi-chhám, *is it not very hard?*

khá-m̄-sí eng-kai lâu-mák-chap, *is it not a thing one ought to weep for?*

tî-kâi ũi-chhù hó-phah, *whereabouts shall I strike?*  
 jiéh-chhut, *how far out?*  
 uân-in sî-chò-ūi, *why is all this?*  
 khá-m̄-sī tng-eng-kai chiè-se--ā, *must it not be so?*  
 uá-lâi, khá-bô Siang-ti kâi-sià-chí-ā, *my coming,—is it not by the will of God, ah?*  
 lū chò-nî hiè-bô-nâng-chhêng, *why are you so destitute of human feeling?*  
 pát-kok kâi-lâu-iá, khá-pat kiù-pát-kok kâi-uâng ôi-tit thut-chhut  
 A-Sút-uâng kâi-chhiú a-bô, *the gods of other nations,—have they ever saved the kings of other nations out of the hand of the king of Assyria or not?*  
 ta! i tō-ti-kò--nē, *now! where are they?*  
 sià-chhūe, āu chò-mih sū, *after sin is forgiven what will you do?*  
 lū kâi-lâu-âi hua-hí-lū-lâi-mē, *is your aged mother pleased to have you come?*  
 ũ-kuán-lí lū a-bô, *does any body control you? Are you free?*  
 tî-tiáng tam-sêng-lū kâi-chhūe, *who becomes security for your sin?*  
 tî-kâi sî-hau khū-tiau phû-sat, *when did you put away your idols?*  
 ke-sîn ũ-lâi-chhūe lū--bô, *will the household gods come after you or not?*  
 lū tî-kâi sî-hau līp-sim, *when did you make up your mind?*  
 lū-pē-bô ũ-chó--lū-mē, *do your father and mother hinder you?*  
 ũ-nâng-tà, chí-kâi-kà sî-sai-kok kà, lū chò-nî-siē, *people say, O this is a western teaching,—what do you think about it?*  
 lū pài-lâu-iá sî-tit-chhūe tî-tiáng, *your worshipping this idol offends whom?*  
 ũ-sî-mih kau-liên--tiéh a-bô, *are you involved in any sort of trouble?*  
 lū ũ-sî-mih chhân-ngiáp, sî-mih chhân-súa a-bô, *are you involved about fields, or any other patrimony?*  
 lū só-chhiet-iàu sî-chò-nî, *what is of the most importance to you?*

---

### Words used in teaching and Arguing.

- tà'-ue, *to talk.*  
 tà'-ue oh-thia", *hard to listen to.*  
 tà'-ue kôi-kôi-thia", *easy to listen to.*  
 tà'-ue bô-mêng-pêh, *he does not speak clearly.*  
 uá kâng-lý-tà", *I to or with you say, i.e. I tell you.*  
 iông-uá-tà", *allow me to state.*  
 kâng-lý tà'-chai, *tell it to you for your information.*  
 khut-lý--tà", *it is for you to speak, i.e. you are allowed to speak.*  
 khut-uá tà" hó--me? *may I be allowed to speak?*  
 chiê'-se' tà' mêng-mêng pêh-pêh, *that is stating it very clearly.*  
 lý tà' tùi-tùi, *you say it exactly.*  
 lý tà' tùi-tong, *you speak to the centre, i.e. to the point.*  
 lý tà' tit tiêh, *you say rightly.*  
 ài'-tà' hó-tà", *if you want to speak, speak.*  
 tà'-lái tà'-khù, *talk back and forth.*  
 tà'-khou-pi", bô-tà' khou-sim, *talking around the edge of a subject and not to the heart of it.*  
 tà'-chhim chék-pôu, *go a step deeper into the subject.*  
 tà'-thò chék-pôu, *to draw back a step in argument.*  
 tà'-lô-chhó, *you talk at random.*  
 i tà' lí-lí-tà", tà'-m-hiah, *he kept on talking without stopping.*  
 i tà'-hiah, âu pát-nâng chiap-tà", *when he had done talking another joined in.*  
 sù-a-sù-a-tà", *continuous discourse.*  
 hia'-tí lý sie-sù-a-tà", *brethren, speak one after another (without breaks).*  
 háh-tà", *corroborative.*  
 háh-tiêh-i tà", *accords with what he said.*  
 tà'-ue mài-khah-chôi, *don't say too much.*  
 tà'-ue mài-khah-tâng, *don't talk too long.*  
 tà'-ue kùe-tâng, *exceed the time in talking.*  
 mài-tà' làng-phăng, *don't talk disjointedly.*  
 lý tà'-khut-i mi'-bát--chê, *let your words be more close together.*  
 tà'-ue mài-kek-chbók, *don't crowd your words together.*  
 lý tà'-fie tiêh-êng-kán, *in your speech use brevity.*  
 lý kái-ue tà'-lái-kàu tiêh, *in what you say you are correct.*  
 tà'-phù-a-i kái-sim-sù, *exposed his design.*  
 tà'-phù-a-i kái-thâm-lũn, *confuted his talk.*  
 tà'-tăng, *emphasize; lay stress on.*  
 tà'-tiêh-lát--chê, *lay on a little more stress.*

i kái-ûe ù-chhim-l-lôu! his words have a profound meaning—surely!

i tà'-lái chhién-pèh chhién-pèh, he speaks clearly and plainly.  
uá tà' phûe-phûe tiā'-tiā', I am speaking only on the surface of the subject.

tāi-chóng-cháng tà', to summarize.

tāi-khai-tà', to state in a general way.

chhó-liák-tà', state it briefly will do.

tà'-tāi-l, to state the gist of anything, or, the leading thoughts.

uá tà'-hí-thia', I speak and you hear me.

tà'-ûe bó-hâm-chiáp, his words have no connection.

tà'-lái ù-tō-lí, there is reason in what you say.

tà'-khui tà'-bûa, he talks off and on, i.e. evasive.

lū tūe-i kái-ûe-bûe tà', you follow on at the end of his talk; you side with him.

tà' só-s'-jiên khut-lū-chai, I will state the rationale of the case for your information.

uá tà'-chhêng-iū khut-lū phah-sng, I will state the facts for you to decide.

bô-ûe káng-i tà', no words wherewith to speak with him.

lú-tūn-nàng tà', fool's talk; a stupid remark.

chhiá'-tiām khut-uá-tà', please be silent and allow me to say a word.

lū chiè'-se'-tà' huân-liáu ka-lò, in so saying you are still a long way off.

chiá'-tà', huân-toah-tà', direct and inverted style.

tà'-lái m-tòng, your talk don't reach the point.

niē'-hí ka-kī-tà', I yield the floor to you, speak for yourself.

hū-chék-kū i tiéh-tà'-tāng, on that sentence he must lay stress.

siet-sái-tà', a supposition; suppose I should say.

tà'-ô-i-ûe, talking at random.

i tà'-ûe tà'-hiab, when he had done talking.

tà'-i kái-ûe, to say his words, i.e. to take his side; to quote from him.

lí, right; reason; principle.

tō-lí, reason; doctrine.

chhêng-lí, reason; propriety, &c.

ngī-lí, a sound principle.

lū tà'-lái tiéh-lí, in speaking you attain reason, i.e. you have spoken rightly.

bô-lí à kàu ũ-lí, *being without reason, to argue until he has, i.e. specious argumentation.*

bô-lí lūan-tāu, *without reason and yet babbling about doctrine.*

bô-lí kāng i piēn-poh, *no reasons wherewith to argue with him.*

chiē-se kái tō-lí chhông-lai m̄-pat-thia, *such doctrine we have never hitherto heard.*

chí-kái tō-lí sī sin kái tō-lí, *this doctrine is a new one.*

chí-kái tō-lí sī-hāh sī-mih iē-nâng? *this doctrine is suitable to what kind of people?*

chí-kái tō-lí hó thok-chhé sī-mih-nâng? *this doctrine may be used to arouse what class of people?*

m̄-sī chiā-lí-kái, *it is not a correct principle.*

in-lí lūn-kàu nāng sūn-hók, *use arguments until people submit, sueh, to explain.*

kói, *to unfold, kói-sueh, to unfold and explain.*

sueh-mêng-pēh, *to explain clearly.*

sueh m̄-mêng, *your explanation is not clear.*

sueh chiē-se chiū-sī mêng-pēh, *in explaining it so, it is clear.*

bô chí-kái sueh *there is no such explanation; not likely.*

sueh-chhut i kái sêng-chiē khí-ē, *to explain its connection with what precedes and follows.*

sueh lân-ló, *explain a little, or explain briefly.*

sueh iáu-chhién, *to explain rather superficially.*

chiā-sueh, huan-sueh, *a direct and an inverted form of expression.*

siáu-sueh, *a minute explanation.*

ôh siáu-sueh, *hard to explain minutely.*

lū hó sueh iáu-khuah-chē, *explain it a little more fully.*

lū hó sueh sòi-siàng, *explain it in detail.*

pat sueh--kūe, *it has been explained.*

thiah-sueh, *explain in detail (word by word, or clause by clause).*

háp-sueh, *explain in general.*

sueh-khui, *to enlarge the scope of the explanation.*

sueh-būa, *to contract " " " "*

hū-sueh, *an erroneous explanation.*

pau; pau-kuat; pau-hām, *to contain; to involve.*

pau-kuat ke kái-lí, *it contains another idea.*

pau-kuat tō-chí, *it is contained here in this.*

pau-kuat chōi-chōi, *it involves a great deal.*

pau-kuat iáu-chhién, *it implies rather less—not much.*

chék-kù ôi-pau-kuat lóng-chóng, *one expression comprises the whole.*  
 só-àm-pau kái-l-sū, *an idea implied in it.*  
 hô-só put-pau, *nothing that it does not comprehend.*  
 àm chí-tiéh, *an implied reference to.*  
 thúan-tâu, *to proclaim doctrine.*  
 piên-lūn tō-lí, *discussing doctrine.*  
 piên-kàu i hô-lūn-tap, *argued till he could not reply.*  
 chí kái-sū í-keng piên-mêng-péh-liáu, *this method has already been shown clearly.*  
 piên-tit mêng-péh, *to argue clearly; attain clearness.*  
 piáu-mêng tō-lí, *to lay down a principle; set forth a doctrine.*  
 ngí-lūn, *to deliberate; consult; discourse about.*  
 hó-lái ngí-lūn chí-kái-sū, *let us come and consult about this matter.*  
 jī-ke siang-lūn, *talking together about something.*  
 piên-lūn kàu-nâng háng-hók, *argue till people submit.*  
 chí-kái-sū khó-sūn, *this matter is credible.*  
 chiá-sū sūn-m̄-kūe, *this cannot be believed.*  
 sūn-tit-kūe, *can be credited.*  
 siang-sūn-i m̄-kūe, *cannot believe him.*  
 siang-sūn sī-tō-chí, *believing lies here.*  
 siang-sūn m̄-siang-sūn sī-tō tī-kò? *wherein lies the believing or the not believing?*  
 sít-chhai ũ-ia̍, *truly it is so; truly, there is some ground (shadow) for it.*  
 m̄-chai ũ-ia̍ a-bô, *do not know whether there is any ground for it or not.*  
 hong-sia̍, *common report; rumor.*  
 kŭ-nâng só-tà̍, *according to what people say.*  
 cheng-nâng kái-l, *the idea of all; common opinion.*  
 nāng-nāng chiò-se̍ tà̍, *every body says so.*  
 poh, *to contradict; argue adversely; to object.*  
 poh-m̄ng, *to ask a controverting question.*  
 poh-i tà̍, *criticized him saying,—*  
 piên-poh tà̍, *objected saying,—*  
 hók-ū-nāng poh-m̄ng, *perhaps somebody will raise an objection.*  
 piên-poh chha-nū kái-ūe, *specious or fallacious reasoning.*

chí-kái f'-keng piēn-poh liáu, *this has been confuted already.*  
 kàu-ta' iā-ū chí-nâng lái piēn-poh, *and, now, here comes this man to object.*  
 poh-khiet, *to contradict.*  
 m̄-hó poh-khùi, *may not be disputed; must not be denied.*  
 mài' tō poh-khùi, *don't be contradictory.*  
 siet-sái tà', *a supposition.*  
 siet-m̄ng kái-ue, *to suppose a question.*  
 siet m̄ng-tap kái-ue, *to suppose a question and answer.*  
 siet poh-m̄ng, *proposed an objection.*  
 tō-m̄ng, *ask in reply.*  
 tō-tà', *said in reply.*  
 tin-tō-thâu tà', *say things wrong end foremost.*  
 úa tin-tō m̄ng-lū, *I would on the other hand ask you.*  
 chò úa tin-tō m̄ng-lū, *suppose I should, on the other hand, ask you.*  
 à, *to dispute.*  
 sie-à, *disputing together.*  
 à-lái à-khū, *disputing back and forth.*  
 hàu'-à, *fond of disputing.*  
 i tō-à, *he is disputing.*  
 à-i m̄-kūe, *cannot out-argue him.*  
 theng-à, *argue at random.*  
 pek-chhiet-à, *argued vehemently.*  
 à iá'-i, *beat him in argument.*  
 à su--i, *beaten by him in argument.*  
 chōi-nâng sie-hū à, *many joined in the dispute.*  
 i à tī-kái? *what is he arguing about?*  
 i à hōi'-chī' kai-sū, *he is disputing about a money payment.*  
 sie-che', *quarrelling together.*  
 che'-lūn, *discussing.*  
 i à-tà'-bō, *he argued saying, it was not so.*  
 bō lū-à, *it is not for you to argue.*  
 m̄-hó à, *it is not good to argue.*  
 put-kūe si hàu'-à, *it is nothing more than fondness for dispute.*  
 phah-sng, *to decide.*  
 hó-lái phah-sng, *come, let us decide.*  
 chò-úa phah-sng, *as I should decide; if it were for me to decide.*



phe<sup>2</sup>-phah, *to decide; settle upon something.*  
 thêng-uá phe<sup>2</sup>-phah, *wait till I decide.*  
 uá chú-l chiè<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup>, *that is my decision.*  
 kuat-l-châi, *very decided.*  
 huat-lóh hó-liáu, *the decision has been rendered.*  
 kua<sup>2</sup>-bú phoi-tiã<sup>2</sup>-tiêh, *the official has given a definite decision.*  
 chò-uá-siê<sup>2</sup>, *as I think; if it were for me to think.*  
 i âm-siê<sup>2</sup>, *he thought within himself.*  
 chip-l, *holding on to his own opinion; bigoted; prejudiced.*  
 chip-l-châi, *very bigoted; strongly prejudiced.*  
 m̄-chip-lí, *does not hold to reason.*  
 m̄-chip-huap, *does not adhere to law.*  
 hó-chip-kín, *hold it firmly.*  
 chí kái-tô-lí hó-chip-siú, *this doctrine it is well to hold and observe.*  
 hó-chip-siú, mài-ka-laúh, *hold, and observe, and don't let it fall.*  
 sūn-huap, *conform to law or usage.*  
 sūn-uâng kái-l, *accord with people's idea.*  
 sūn-kui-kú, *follow the custom.*  
 chiá sī hí-ka-kí pan--chhut-lâi, *this is a conjecture of your own.*  
 lú chai-tát uá tui a-m̄ tui, *do you reckon I am right or not?*  
 uá pân chiè<sup>2</sup>-se<sup>2</sup>, *I reckon so; I surmise that.*  
 lí pan-jieh-chôi, *how much do you reckon.*  
 phi-jū, *a comparison; parable; allegory.*  
 chiá sī phi-jū a-sī sít-sū? *is this a comparison, or an actual fact?*  
 hó lai pí-chò sī-mih-kái? *what shall I, in comparing, say it is (like)?*  
 hó-phi-jū chò sī-mih-muêh? *what thing shall I compare it to?*  
 phi-jū tà<sup>2</sup>-uân--hiáu, chiū-tà<sup>2</sup> sít-sū, *when the comparison is finished then I will speak of the actual circumstance.*  
 hó-chuang sī-mih-muêh lai-pí? *what thing shall I take to compare it with?*  
 chuang thoi<sup>2</sup> kí<sup>2</sup>--kái, lai-pí-jū thoi<sup>2</sup>-m̄-kí<sup>2</sup>--kái, *take the visible to illustrate the invisible.*  
 soi<sup>2</sup> tà<sup>2</sup>-phi-jū, âu tà<sup>2</sup>-sít-sū, *first state the illustration and then the facts.*



bô-tháu-khùi kái-muêh tồ-chò ũ se"-mia" kái-muêh lâi tà", *to speak of an inanimate thing as if animate, i.e. to personify.*

Sai-nái-sua" sī pí-jū hiên-chāi kái-sū, *Mt. Sinai illustrates the things of the present.*

chang nek-thói kái-sū lâi pí-jū sim-leng kái, *take the affairs of the body to illustrate the things of the spirit.*

chiang-sòl lâi pí tōa--kái, *use the small to illustrate the large.*

f"-sòl khài-kíp tōa, *take the small and symbolize the large.*

pí chá-jit--kái iáu mêng pèh, *as compared with yesterday he is more clear.*

piáu-iē", *a symbol; illustration.*

piáu-hō,

siáu-iá", *a type; a shadow.*

sái, *to cause.*

só sái--kái, *that which is caused.*

sái-kàu, *to cause to come to pass.*

sái-ōng, *to make use of.*

ài" sái-nâng mêng-hiáu, *will cause people to understand.*

tì-kàu, *so that; to the end that.*

i-kái tì-khí, *its beginning; original cause of anything.*

só-f", *therefore; the why of anything; sequence.*

só-iū, *the whence of anything.*

só-f"--chiá, *the consequences; results.*

só-f"-jiên, *the natural consequences.*

ũ só-iū iā ũ-só-f", *there is a cause and there is an effect.*

só-f" chiè"-se", *and because it is so.*

chí-kái só-f" jiên sī chò-ní? *the natural consequence then is what?*

ũ sī-mih só-f"? *what are the consequences?*

se"-jiên, *fixed; a matter of course.*

kai-jiên, *of necessity; a matter of course.*

ũ kái sī se"-jiên, *some are so naturally.*

chiè"-se" se" f"-jiên, *it is so naturally.*

chū-jiên jū-jiên, *of necessity so; self-existent.*

kúa"-jiên; chū-jiên, *of course.*

se"-ngē; se" tia"-tiēh, *fixed; definite; unalterable.*

lú kái pē"-chêng kái só-f", *the cause of your disease.*

lú só-f" kái pē"-chêng sī chá-jit sie"-tiēh huang, *the cause of your disease is that yesterday you caught cold.*

ta",—f'-keng sī chiè"-se"--liáu, *now,—since that's the way things are.*  
i kai só-f' òi kám-tōng nāng, *that whereby it moves people; motive power.*

chún só-f' mǎn chiá, sī-lú m̄ pat bói-chháu khù-uāng, *the reason why the boat is slow is, that you did not buy straw and scorch the bottom.*

i m̄-thia" kái-uân-kù sī-i chip-ka-kī kái-l, *the reason why he wouldn't listen is because he clings to his own notion.*

sng-lài sng-khù, *considering the matter to and fro.*

chiè"-se" thóit"-kī"-lài, *and so we may perceive.*

chiè"-se" khó-kiên, *and so it may be seen.*

ta", chiū-khó kiên sī-chò-nī? *now, then, that which may be perceived is what?*

kù-chhū sng-khí-lài, *and so I conclude.*

phah-sng-thóit"; tá-sng-thóit", *consider and note.*

ta",—sū f'-keng sī-chiè"-se"--liáu—kù-chhū, *now,—matters being thus and so,—therefore—.*

mōng-mōng sī-chiè"-se", *obviously it is so.*

òh-i kái-ūe, *repeat or narrate his words.*

òh-i kái-lái-léh, *narrate the circumstances of the affair, or tell its history.*

òh-i kái-khí-chí, *tell its beginning and ending.*

òh-i kái-uân-iū, *explain the cause or origin of it.*

m̄-chai thau-búe, *I don't know head nor tail (of it).*

m̄-chai thau-sū, *I don't know what the beginning of it was.*

m̄-chai kiau-búe, *I don't know the issue or outcome of it.*

i kái kat-kúe", *its fruits; results.*

i kái suah-búe, *the issue; upshot.*

sū-chhêng, *the circumstances; affairs.*

uá ham-lú-thua", *I will narrate and you hear.*

chià"-l, *a right notion; a correct idea.*

m̄-chià"-l, *not a correct idea.*

hó-l, *a good motive.*

m̄-chià"-iē", *not well formed; not a good manner.*

kui-chià"-i, *set him right.*

m̄-tùi, *not right; don't correspond.*

m̄-tùi-huap, *not according to rule.*

chôit"-âu m̄-hô, *what precedes and what follows don't correspond.*

hâh-tiéh soi"-chai-nāng só-tà", *accords with what the prophet says.*

- bô chék-kiā<sup>2</sup> m̄-tùi, *not an item that does not correspond.*  
 lŭ só-tap hui uá só-mŭg, *what you answer is not what I ask.*  
 kiau lŭ-chá só-tà<sup>2</sup> m̄-hú, *with what you formerly said it does not agree.*  
 m̄-hú-háh lŭ táng-chá tà<sup>2</sup>, *does not agree with your speech a while ago.*  
 tùi-jī, *correlatives.*  
 táng-lŭi kái-ŭe, *words of the same class; synonyms.*  
 sie-tùi-mŭn kái l-sŭ, *opposite signification.*  
 iap-thiap kái-ŭe, *hinge words; capable of twofold meaning.*  
 l-sŭ siang-thong, *ideas mutually connected.*  
 nō-sŭ sie phit-phŭe, *the two things match, or go well together.*  
 siē<sup>2</sup>, *to think.*  
 lŭ hó-siē<sup>2</sup>, *think.*  
 chhim-siē<sup>2</sup>, *deep thinking; a profound thought.*  
 chhién-siē<sup>2</sup> *shallow thinking.*  
 lŭ hó siē<sup>2</sup>-chhim--chē, *think a little deeper.*  
 lŭ siē<sup>2</sup> m̄-chhim, *you don't think deeply.*  
 sòl-sim siē<sup>2</sup>, *think carefully.*  
 gōu-siē<sup>2</sup> *err in thinking.* ngà-siē<sup>2</sup>, *a foolish notion.*  
 lŭ siē<sup>2</sup>-chhò, *you think erroneously.*  
 siē<sup>2</sup>-m̄-kàu thiet-tóí, *you don't think down to the bottom of it.*  
 kiù-kàu chhim l chái, *to pry down very deeply into the subject.*  
 chhién-chhién kái-l, *a very superficial thought.*  
 ngŭ-jien, *necessarily so.*  
 ngŭ-jien kái ln-tap, *the answer is a matter of course.*  
 eng-kai hun-piét, *it is necessary to discriminate.*  
 eng-kai pién-mêng, *it is necessary to show clearly.*  
 hun-piét m̄-pat tò-khŭ, *he does not, or did not, know how to discriminate.*  
 khi-tang, eng-kai hun-piét tŭ-kái hó tŭ-kai m̄-hó, *among them, it is necessary to distinguish which are good and which are not good.*  
 khó-f<sup>2</sup> chai, *so you may know.*  
 chí-kái-sŭ f<sup>2</sup>-keng chai--liáu, *this matter is known already.*  
 ngŭan-bŭn só-tà<sup>2</sup>, *that which the original text says.*  
 chí-chiē<sup>2</sup> kái chhiet-iàu sŭ tŭ chí-chék-kŭ, *the essential point above is in this sentence.*  
 chò-gāi, *to hinder.*

háh-lú-thia"--mē? *is the statement acceptable? Will you listen?*  
 só-chhông-chhut, *derived from.*

sū chò-ní phàn-tuàn? *how is the matter decided?*

thúan-kàu mũa-ti-kò, *promulgated every where.*

kiên-sek chhién, *of superficial discernment.*

pàng-tiâu--háu, *relinquished.*

la-kháu, *to brag.*

bô-só-hiàng, *none to whom he may turn; without tendency.*

kak-ū só-hiàng, *every thing has its own tendency; each has its own proclivities.*

ū-lí só-tō, *wherever his interest lies.*

tán-kàu bô-huap-tiéh, *when at length there is no resource.*

bô si-mih-sū hó-khut-lú mán, *nothing for you to lay hold of.*

chiá-su tì nāng m̄ chai! *who is there that don't know this!*

pun-chām, *to divide off in sections; make divisions.*

lí chhim-àu, *the doctrine is profound.*

chí-kái-chhūe kui-pàng tì-tiàng? *to whom shall this offense be imputed?*

iū-chí-kái-sū tì-khi, *from this affair had its origin.*

êng-i chò-uân-iū, *used him for a pretext.*

siang-kuan-hī, *mutually connected.*

siang-sók, *mutually related.*

ū kang-lút, *it has energy.*

hiên-lók, *linked together.*

chiang-hok-im lái-thiap tù chí-kái lút-huap, *use the Gospel to supplement the law.*

nô-kái sie-tháh, *reduplicate.*

jī-ke siang-niē, *neither would yield.*

chêk-nāng niē--chē, chiū-hiah, *if one man would yield a little, the matter—then there would be an end of it.*

i tak-tháu hua"-hí, *he nodded his head in approval.*

chiē"-se" sī gōu-tiéh là sô-kài-kong-lâu, *this is offending against the merits of Jesus.*

thia"-i kái-kháu-khi, *to listen and mark the spirit he is of.*

chí-kái ta"-tà" sī-sók-tō tì-tiàng? *this load of responsibility belongs to whom?*

khí-ūe-thân, *open the subject.*

ūe-thâu ūe-búe, *introduction and conclusion; initial words and final words.*

kiah-phùā i lân-ló, *to suggest to him a little; give a hint.*

thok-chhé i, *to arouse him.*

bô-chhng-kái kái i-tà", *did not tell him the whole of it.*

táng chék-pit, *to amplify a little; advance a step.*

ām-háh, *an unexpected coincidence.*

háh sī-mih ēng? *what use can be made of this?*

chí sī chiap-chiē" a-sī chiap-ē? *does it connect with what precedes or with what follows?*

sók tō-chiē" a-sī sók-tō-ē, *does it belong to what goes before or to what follows?*

chiē"-ē kùan-chhūan, *the passages above and below are mutually connected.*

Iak-hân sī sūa-tiēh huap-lút a-sī sūa-tiēh hok-im? *does John connect with the law or with the Gospel.*

liên tō chiē"-kū iā liên ē-kū, *it is connected with what precedes and also with what follows.*

i kái sēng-chiē" khí-ē, *its context.*

hūan-iáu ū-huap khó-í chheng-ngī, *there remains yet a way whereby one may be justified.*

khng-kò i hó-ài", *persuade him to it.*

khng-kò i hó-mài", *dissuade him from it.*

tiēh chām-tà", *divide it up into sections.*

hó-pun a, *divide into branches.*

m-thang-sū, *don't fully apprehend things.*

chiá sī-úa só-liáu m-kàu, *this is something I did not reckon on.*

kùe i só-siē", *beyond what he thought.*

chí-kái tō-lí úa hán-ēng, *this precept is of limited use.*

háh-ēng, *it suits my purpose.*

chí-tiēh sī òih, *of limited application.*

chí-tiēh sī-khūa", *of broad application.*

chang-chúi tà" chò-nâng, *to personify water as man.*

chang-nâng tà" chò-chúi, *to speak of man as water.*

thòi-nâng siet-mng, *to suppose a question put by another.*

lái sīm-sit, *judge what is truth.*

lái-sīm sī-hui, *discriminate between the true and false*

chang chí pēng-kū lá i sīm-chhat, *take this evidence and sift it.*

tiáu-sūa" jū-jū kek-kiū kek-kiū, *a tangled thread all mixed up*

together.

uá thòi-chí-kài mầu-pē-kài-uân-iú, sī êc, *I consider that the origin of this trouble is, êc.*

chhok-tiéh-khiàu, *stir up his faculties.*

khiàu-thâu mé, *his faculties are quick.*

khiàu-thâu mán, *his faculties are slow.*

û-chék-kiã" tō-lí chhok-tiéh-uá kài-khiàu, *a truth suggests itself to me.*

chhui-chhut nguân-thâu kài-l-sù, *search out the original idea.*

chhui-lūn chhut-lâi, *to infer out.*

chhui-lūn, *to infer; an inference.*

só-chhui-lūn chhut-lâi-kài, *something that was reached by inference.*

káng kiù kàu-thiet-tói, *to explain things to the bottom.*

uá káng-kiù chí-kài-chúi, *I am going to explain this (thing called) water.*

sū û-hū û-sít, *things have a shadow and a substance.*

kiù-búa, *to condense (in a discourse); a synthesis.*

thiáh-khui, *to expand or amplify (a subject); to analyse.*

i kài káu-keng, *his statements.*

liām-thâu, *thought; idea.*

i kài-l-sù, *his purpose; his idea.*

uá sūn-siē, *I think.*

sūn-liām, *thoughts.*

toa-toa" sī-chí kài-l, *this idea only.*

to-sim to-gí, *much perplexity.*

chúá sī-sít-kū, *this is true testimony.*

phou-pái, *arrangement.*

phou-pái l-sù, *to arrange his thoughts.*

phou-pái bô-mih-bó, *the arrangement is not good.*

phou-pái tiéh-û-chôi", û-tang, û-âu, *the arrangement must have a beginning a middle and an end.*

sie-hên-lòk, *mutually connected; interdependent.*

chí-nô-kù bô-sie-chiap, *these two sentences have no connection.*

û sī mih kuân-chhiàn? *what relationship is there between them?*

bô—put kùe sī-soi"-áu tia"-tiā", *none, except that one is before and the other after.*

háh-chò chék-ê-tà", *sum them up together.*

liáu-phú liáu-phú, *to intimate.*

ìn-tap mêng-pêh, *answer clearly.*  
 hó ìn-tap, *a good reply.*  
 ìn-tap khùe-chhài, *prompt at a reply.*  
 ìn-tap ôi kùe-nâng, *surpassing others in repartee.*  
 ìn-tap tùi-tùi, *you have answered exactly.*  
 é-kháu bô-ngân, *mouth stopped, not a word to say.*  
 hùe-thâu siê-túg, *to reflect.*  
 pē-ke ũ chhêng-lí, *reason on both sides.*  
 m̄-ká-ì, *dare not reply.*  
 i bô-ì, *he made no answer.*  
 thak-chū-húe, *the literati.*  
 tōa hák-bún kái-nâng, *a man of great learning.*  
 pá-hák, *full of learning.*  
 m̄-tèng-l, *not applicable.*  
 thong-êng, *of general use.*  
 chhūe-pāng chhūe-khiāh, *to hunt for a pretext.*  
 būn-put-khó ũi, *never let it be.*  
 sat i-kái-chhūi, *stop his mouth.*  
 hiau-khui, *to open a book.*  
 chí-kái-sū hó-pàng chék-pōi siap-si, *will lay this topic aside for a moment.*  
 bōi-khūi nín ngék-tiēh, *you will not be allowed to oppose.*  
 iū chū chhui-lūn chhut-lai, *inferred from a book statement.*  
 m̄-chai siē i-kái-l si hó-l, a-si ak-l, *you do not consider whether his motive is a good one or a bad one.*  
 chí-chiē só-tà chék-kū kái l-sū si chiē-se, *the idea of the above sentence is this.*  
 būn-si, *thread of a discourse.*  
 būn-si tà būe-uân se ũ chhut-lai, *before the thread of his discourse was finished, there issued, etc.*  
 lūn chí-kái-sū si chūn chhiet-iàu a-si nāng chhiet-iàu, *as regards this matter, is the boat of more importance or is the man.*  
 ta, chí-chék-ngân, *now, this word (just quoted).*  
 ta, chí-kái khiām-sūn, *now, this subject of humility.*  
 i ũ, chiāng i kái-ū lai-tà, *if he has, then speak according to what he has.*  
 ũ bô, chiāng i kái-bô lai-tà, *if he has not then speak according to what he has not.*  
 chí-kái-sū kan-gái-tiēh, *this matter interferes.*  
 chí si chêng-nāng tà-kái, *this is what every body says.*

tâi-huâm, *in general.*

só m-eng-kai, *that which is unnecessary.*

mién-gí, *no doubt.*

sùā lōh-khū lān-ló, *proceed down a little further (as in reading).*

nín thák sic-sùā sie-sùā, *read one after the other.*

thák-ū-kū ū-tāu, *read so as to mark the sentences and the clauses.*

lū tà-ue tiéh-hiáng-liāng hiáng-liāng, *let your speaking be clear and distinct.*

lū tà-ue sī-khang-khang, *your words are empty.*

chhūe-phēng-kū chhut-lāi, *to hunt out testimony.*

thia-tiéh, sòng-khūai, *interesting to hear.*

thāu-chék-kiā, jī-chék-kiā, sā-chék-kiā, *firstly, secondly, thirdly.*

chām-thāu, *beginning of a section.*

thāu-chék-chām, jī-chék-chām, *first division, second division.*

ī bô chí-mêng ī kái-lī-sū, *did not indicate clearly that he meant.*

bô chí-mêng ī sī sin-se, *did not indicate clearly that he was a teacher.*

chāh-thāu chāh-būe, *interrupting.*





## List of syllables representing the sounds used in pronouncing the Tie Chiu dialect.

PREPARED BY REV. S. B. PARTRIDGE.

The following list gives, with probably but few exceptions, all of the sounds used in speaking the Tie Chiu dialect. A few of the syllables represent reading sounds only, and are not heard in conversation.

The syllables are in many cases repeated with different tonal marks and in some cases two or three definitions follow the same syllable, but the list does not profess to be exhaustive in either of these respects.

As far as possible the more common definitions have been chosen, and where more than one definition follows a syllable, the definitions represent different characters of the same tone.

<p><b>鴨亞</b> A a crow; or; a name prefix.  á, to break off.  à, to dispute.  ã, a final particle.  ã-sí, if.  A", to cover.  â", to separate quarrelers.  à", to brood.  ê", to bruise.  ê", stuffing for pies.  Ah, a duck; to escort.  Ai, to pity.  âi, a mother.  ái, to sigh.  ài, to love.  âi, exclamation of surprise.  Al", to desire.  Aih, a squeaking sound.  Aih", a creaking sound.</p>	<p>Ak, wicked; to water.  Am, a monastery.  ám, rice water.  àm, dark.  ãm, the neck.  An, peace.  àn, according to.  Ang, a husband.  âng, red; a flood.  àng, a jar.  Ap, to pay a balance.  áp, a small box.  At, to repress.  Au, a bowl.  âu, the throat.  áu, to twist.  àu, obscure; angry; to rot.  ãu, after.</p>
---	--

Au<sup>n</sup>, *clamorous.*

Auh, *vexed.*

Ba, *protuberant.*  
bā, *to run swiftly.*

Bah, *meat.*

Bai, *the eyebrows; a lintel.*

Bak, *ink; wood.*

Bat, *close texture.*

Báu, *the Pleiades; 5 to 7 A. M.*

Bé, *a horse; weights.*

Béh, *wheat.*

Bí, *rice.*  
bí, *to dive*

Biau, *mysterious.*

Biê, *to trace; to peep.*  
bie, *a temple.*

Bih, *to crouch down.*  
bih, *bamboo splints.*

Blt, *honey.*

Bô, *no or not.*  
bó, *mother.*  
bô, *a hat; a millstone.*

Bou, *a mold.*  
bóu, *a wife; a Chinese acre.*

Bô, *a magician; to accuse falsely.*  
bú, *military; to attack.*  
bū, *business.*  
bū, *mist; to destroy with guns.*

Bôa, *to grind; to approach.*

Buah, *to smear.*  
buah, *cymbals.*

Búan, *to neglect; a curtain.*

būan, *ten thousand.*

Buang, *to disregard; destroyed.*  
búang, *disorderly.*  
būang, *the full of the moon.*

Búe, *plums; a go-between.*  
búe, *the end.*  
būe, *not yet.*

Buéh, *stockings.*

Bun, *literary.*  
būn, *gnats.*  
bún, *involved.*  
bùn, *to burrow.*  
būn, *unhappy.*

But, *flavor.*  
bút, *seasoning; to beat out dust.*

Cha, *time past; dregs.*  
chá, *formerly; early.*  
chà, *to feign; fitful.*  
chā, *to shudder.*

Chā<sup>n</sup>, *to dredge for.*

Chah, *to take along; to roll up*  
*the sleeves.*  
cháh, *to shut off the wind.*

Chai, *to know; cuttings; calamity.*  
chái, *the navel.*  
chái, *a year; sediment; to rule.*  
chài, *a gain; to carry, as in a*  
*boat.*  
chāi, *now; how?*  
chāi, *a boat load.*

Chak, *to make; to bind up.*

Cham, *a needle.*  
chám, *to chop off.*  
chàm, *to vilify.*  
chām, *a paragraph.*

Chan, *a lifting net.*

- chàn, *steps*.  
 chàn, *a ware house; to praise*.  
 chǎn, *a terrace; viscera*.  
 chān, *to present*.
- Chang, *the coir palm; head dress*.  
 chāng, *stairs; classifier of trees*.  
 cháng, *a wig; to bind*.  
 chàng, *strong*.
- Chap, *juice; mixed*.  
 cháp, *ten; guard station*.
- Chat, *a joint*.  
 chát, *solid*.
- Chau, *to encounter; dregs*.  
 chāu, *alike*.  
 cháu, *to run*.  
 chàu, *an iron kettle set in masonry*.  
 chǎu, *to create*.
- Che, *to abstain*.  
 ché, *an elder sister*.  
 chè, *a debt*.  
 chē, *adverb of comparison*.
- Che", *to strive*.  
 chē", *clear sky*.  
 ché", *a will*.  
 chě", *quiet*.
- Cheh, *to reprove; to splice threads*.
- Chek, *one; a candle; to store up*.  
 chék, *to enrich*.
- Cheng, *a bell; a cup; to pound*.  
 chēng, *mark of past time*.  
 chéng, *seed; to swell*.  
 chèng, *disease; all; to plant*.  
 chěng, *clear; entirely*.
- Chí, *this; seeds; to cease; only*.  
 chì, *to reach to; the will*.  
 chǐ, *to lick; 9 to 11 A. M.*
- Chi", *felt; a wedge; the limbs*.  
 chí", *copper cash*.  
 chǐ", *immature*.  
 chǐ", *an arrow; to jostle*.
- Chia, *to screen*.  
 chiá, *a wife*.  
 chià, *sugar cane*.  
 chiǎ, *to depend on; a register*.
- Chia", *quartz; lean*.  
 chiá", *perfect*.  
 chiá", *fresh; to repair*.  
 chià", *correct*.
- Chiah, *a sparrow; a vestige*.  
 chiáh, *to eat*.
- Chiak, *a cup*.
- Chiam, *pointed*.  
 chiām, *obliged*.  
 chiām, *gradually; temporary*.
- Chiang, *a sign of future time*.  
 chiáng, *to rule; senior*.  
 chiàng, *to commend*.  
 chiāng, *a staff; to measure*.
- Chiap, *to receive; spry*.
- Chiau, *to own to*.  
 chiáu, *birds*.  
 chiàu, *to regard*.  
 chiǎu, *earnest*.
- Chiauh, *small birds*.
- Chiauk, *to sell, as office, or title*.
- Chie, *the plantain; pepper*.  
 chié, *few*.  
 chiè, *to shine upon; a sacrifice*.
- Chie", *a chapter; camphor; starch*.  
 chié", *an oar; to watch*.  
 chiè", *thus; relishes*.  
 chiē", *to itch; to ascend*.

chiē<sup>2</sup>, *upper*.  
 Chieh, *to borrow*.  
 chiēh, *stone*.  
 Chien, *to fry*.  
 chién, *to trim ; to trample on*.  
 chièn, *to fight ; to tremble*.  
 Chiet, *that is*.  
 Chih, *to fold ; to receive*.  
 chih, *the tongue ; to break*.  
 Chim, *to kiss ; to deliberate*.  
 chím, *a pillow*.  
 chím, *to immerse*.  
 Chin, *true*.  
 chin, *to excite ; to shake*.  
 chin, *to introduce ; to advance*.  
 chin, *to exhaust*.  
 Chip, *to hold fast*.  
 chip, *to collect*.  
 Chit, *to weave ; a ridge*.  
 chit, *disease ; envy*.  
 Chiu, *around ; the eyeball ; a department ; an islet*.  
 chiú, *spirituous liquor*.  
 chiù, *to curse ; to scold*.  
 chiũ, *to go towards*.  
 Chiuh, *a sound, as of squirting water*.  
 Chng, *bricks*.  
 chng, *the whole*.  
 chng, *finger ; toe*.  
 chng, *to bury ; to bore*.  
 chng, *to accuse ; to whirl*.  
 Chô, *a trough ; a scow*.  
 chô, *the left side ; to impede*.  
 chô, *to make ; why ?*  
 chô, *to sit ; to assist ; to build*.

Choh, *to do*.  
 choh, *to interrupt*.  
 Chôi, *uniform*.  
 chôi, *fiber used as thread*.  
 chôi, *many*.  
 Chôi<sup>2</sup>, *before*.  
 chôi<sup>2</sup>, *the fingers ; to clip*.  
 Choih, *to sop up*.  
 choh, *to slice*.  
 Chok, *sufficient ; to supplicate*.  
 chok, *a clan or family*.  
 Chong, *the whole*.  
 chong, *altogether*.  
 chong, *a follower*.  
 Chou, *to rent*.  
 chou, *ancestors*.  
 chōu, *suddenly*.  
 Chu, *a pearl ; vermillion ; small pox*.  
 chú, *lord*.  
 chù, *to melt ; to eat, as worms do*.  
 chũ, *to stop ; to assemble*.  
 Chûa, *serpents*.  
 chûa, *paper*.  
 chûa, *times*.  
 Chua<sup>2</sup>, *to grasp*.  
 chûa<sup>2</sup>, *a fountain or spring*.  
 chûa<sup>2</sup>, *a shallow cup*.  
 chûa<sup>2</sup>, *ignoble*.  
 Chuah, *deficient in ; to splash*.  
 Chuak, *muddy*.  
 Chuan, *set in one's way*.  
 chuán, *to transfer*.  
 chuàn, *to earn small sums*.  
 chuân, *to edit*.  
 Chuang, *the style of dress*.  
 chuäng, *to collide ; form*.

Chuat, *stupid.*

Chùe, *exceedingly.*

chûe, *sin.*

chûe, *a column,*

Chuh, *to suck; a dimple.*

Chui, *projecting; a point.*

chúi, *water.*

chùi, *Intoxicated.*

chúi, *a substitute.*

Chun, *a bottle; to respect.*

chûn, *a boat.*

chún, *to permit.*

chùn, *steep; an abyss.*

chûn, *to wring.*

chûn, *a gust.*

Chut, *underlings; smooth.*

chút, *glutinous rice.*

Chy, *a book; to prepare food.*

chû, *potatoes.*

chû, *a child.*

chû, *to soak up; to enrich.*

chû, *one's self.*

Chha, *a mistake.*

chhâ, *wood; stupid.*

chhá, *to roast.*

chhâ, *a voucher.*

Chhá", *to loiter.*

Chhah, *to insert; to support.*

chháh, *mixed.*

Chhai, *conjecture.*

chhâi, *talents; wealth.*

chhái, *to pluck; fits.*

chhài, *vegetable.*

Chhák, *a chisel.*

Chham, *to mix; to sign.*

chhâm, *a cliff; mortified.*

chhám, *distressing.*

chhâm, *to repent; an omen.*

chhâm, *diagonally.*

chhâm, *to peck, as a bird.*

Chhan, *a meal.*

chhân, *a field for rice.*

Chhang, *azure.*

chhâng, *to conceal.*

Chhap, *confusion.*

Chhat, *varnish; to inquire into.*

chhát, *a thief.*

Chhau, *to copy.*

chhâu, *to shift; a resort.*

chháu, *grass.*

chhàu, *a stench; hasty.*

chhâu, *a hubbub.*

Chhe, *a fork; an envoy.*

chhê, *to examine; to throttle.*

chhé, *to haul.*

chhè, *a privy.*

Chhe", *raw; a star; green.*

chhé", *to awaken.*

chhê", *cymbals.*

Chbeh, *a book; a device.*

Chhek, *paddy; to fathom; the knees.]*

Chheng, *pure; to designate.*

chhêng, *the feelings.*

chhèng, *guns; suitable.*

chhêng, *a door-bar; to wear.*

Chhi, *a wife; to perch; horrid.*

chhî, *to arrange.*

chhí, *shame.*

chhì, *thorns; to test.*

chhî, *a market.*

chhî, *to feed.*

Chhi", *fresh.*

Chhia, *a wagon; wasteful.*

Chhiá", *to invite ; moreover.*

Chhiah, *flesh color.*

Chhiak, *many ; a sparrow.*

Chhiam, *bamboo slips for drawing lots.*

chhiâm, *in seclusion.*

chhiàm, *to arrogate to one's self.*

chhiâm, *in ranks.*

Chhiang, *a prostitute ; sweet flag.*

chhiâng, *a long time.*

chhiáng, *a shed.*

chhiàng, *to lead.*

chhiäng, *crippled.*

Chhiap, *a concubine ; to steal.*

Chhiau, *to mix.*

chhiâu, *a dynasty.*

chhiáu, *ridicule ; tolerably.*

chhiâu, *powerful.*

chhiäu, *to retch.*

Chhiauh, *to look around, as in thought.]*

Chhie, *masculine.*

chhiê, *to laugh.*

Chhie", *a spear.*

chhiê", *a wall.*

chhié", *to take by force.*

chhiê", *an elephant.*

chhie", *to shed light upon.*

Chhieh, *a foot in length.*

chhiéh, *matting.*

Chhien, *to remove.*

chhiên, *to progress.*

chhién, *shallow.*

Chhiet, *important.*

Chhih, *to brand ; to take fire.*

Chhim, *deep.*

chhím, *to search for.*

chhím, *to sleep.*

chhím, *a sibylline hint.*

chhím, *to move.*

Chhin, *one's own ; like.*

chhín, *a courtier.*

chhín, *steelyards ; cold.*

Chhip, *to pursue.*

Chhit, *seven ; to wipe.*

Chhiu, *the beard ; autumn.*

chhiú, *a prisoner ; to revenge.*

chhiú, *the hand ; to redeem.*

chhiü, *a tree.*

Chhng, *a granary ; a hamlet ; to bore.*

chhng, *a table ; a bed.*

chhng, *to thrust into.*

Chho, *at the first.*

chhó, *to humble.*

chhó, *distress ; rough.*

chhò, *to file ; to mistake ; rough.*

chhò, *to contain.*

Chhoh, *a quantity ; contracted.*

Chhòì, *flour.*

Chhoi", *a thousand.*

chhôi", *silk-worms.*

chhói", *a small broom.*

chhòì", *to urge on.*

Chhoih, *to sob.*

Chhok, *to excite ; to seize.*

Chhong, *intelligent ; to fill up.*

chhông, *to follow ; to reverence.*

chhông, *to bother.*

Chhou, *rough.*

chhòu, *grieved.*

chhòu, *vinegar.*

Chhu, *to prune.*

- chhú, *leisurely.*  
 chhú, *to take in marriage; to judge.*  
 chhù, *a house; to set in order.*  
 Chhúa, *ivory.*  
 chhúa, *to take a wife; to lead.*  
 Chhúa", *to bar.*  
 Chhuah, *to deceive; to pluck.*  
 chhuah, *to deflect.*  
 Chhuan, *complete.*  
 Chhuang, *to collide with.*  
 Chhuat, *to take without permission.*  
 Chhue, *to blow; to cook by steaming.*  
 chhue, *a switch.*  
 chhue, *marrow.*  
 chhue, *to search.*  
 Chhueh, *to sip with a noise.*  
 Chhui, *to infer; to urge.*  
 chhui, *fine; to estimate.*  
 chhui, *the mouth; fragments.*  
 Chhun, *the spring; to stretch forth.*  
 chhun, *remaining.*  
 chhun, *incompatible; stupid.*  
 chhun, *an inch.*  
 Chhut, *to go forth.*  
 Chhy, *to unroll.*  
 chhy, *mercy; a defect.*  
 chhy, *a rat; this.*  
 chhy, *a time.*  
 Chhyh, *to stoop.*  
 Ê, *dumb.*  
 ê, *below; to wade.*  
 ê, *a time; repeatedly.*  
 Ê, *roof beams.*
- Eh, *whatever; an obstruction.*  
 Êk, *to bathe; to translate; wings.*  
 Eng, *ought; an infant; a hawk.*  
 éng, *waves.*  
 èng, *to fulfill.*  
 êng, *pregnant.*  
 êng, *to use.*  
 Gã, *to take hold, as with an anchor.*  
 Gãi, *to obstruct.*  
 Gâu, *wise.*  
 Gauh, *music.*  
 Gê, *a sprout; the cocoa tree.*  
 a yamen; *tusks.*  
 gé, *a prong.*  
 gē, *to smooth with a trowel.*  
 Gék, *jade stone; a prison.*  
 Gí, *doubt.*  
 Giã, *surprise.*  
 Giáp, *constantly.*  
 Gô, *a goose; fetters.*  
 gô, *to starve.*  
 Goi, *handicraft.*  
 Gôu, *a porpoise.*  
 gôu, *to thwart.*  
 Gô, *bovine animals.*  
 Gûa, *outside.*  
 Guêh, *moon; or month.*  
 Gûi, *asafetida.*  
 Gút, *to sleep.*  
 Gû, *words.*  
 gû, *a spur; to resist; to curb.*  
 𠵿gû, *jade.*

Ha, to bend; to breathe upon.

hâ, to gird.

hà, mourning apparel.

hã, the noise of a crowd.

Há, twilight; a question mark;  
to frighten.

Hah, petals.

háh, agreeing.

Hâi, the bones of the body.

hái, the sea.

hâi, to fight; languid.

hâi, to injure.

Hâi, to pay.

hâi, groaning.

Haih, a creaking, or sound of dis-  
tress.

Hak, to guide; to visit a superior.

hák, to learn.

Ham, a bivalve with scalloped shells.

hâm, official position.

hâm, vexed.

hâm, to ruin.

Hân, cold; a literary degree.

hân, seldom; to oppose.

hân, powerful.

hân, a limit.

Hâng, a ware house; to submit to.

hâng, a lane.

Hap, to swell.

háp, to close up.

Hat, to rule.

Hau, to scream.

hâu, very minute; leisurely.

hâu, to howl.

hâu, young.

hâu, the king crab; to wait for.

Hàu, willing; fond of.

Haub, a sound, as of pigs eating.

He, shortness of breath.

hé, shrimps; a flaw.

hè, to wait.

hě, to vow.

hē, summer.

Hê, fishing stakes.

hé, a question mark.

hē, assent.

Hèb, to intimidate; to shorten

hèb, to scatter. sail.]

Hèb, captious.

Hek, dark; to examine.

hék, weary.

Heng, to prosper; the breast.

hèng, punishment; form.

hèng, pleased with.

hèng, conduct; fortunate.

Hi, to expect.

hí, joy.

hì, theatrical performances.

hì, to conduct.

Hì, a stringed instrument.

hì, to shake off; to sprinkle.

hì, the ear.

Hia, boots; a dipper.

hiá, a flaw; leisure.

hiá, those.

hiá, tiles; ants.

Hia, an elder brother.

hiá, to put on fuel.

hiá, to widen.

Hiab, to stop.

hiáh, a constable; the forehead.

Hiam, peppery.



hiám, to find fault with.  
hiám, dangerous.

Hiang, odor.

hiáng, to sound; to enjoy.  
hiàng, facing towards; taxes.

Hiáp, the sides; to cherish enmity.

Hiau, wicked; brave.  
hiáu, to comprehend.

Hiauh, to throw up, as the coat  
sleeve.

Hiauh\*, to shake off.

Hiè, that.

Hiê\*, a village; incense.  
hiê\*, that.

Hiéh, leaves of plants.

Hien, to raise slightly.  
hiên, a sage; obscure.  
hién, manifest; dangerous.  
hièn, to offer; a ruler.  
hiên, now.

Hiet, a scorpion.

Hih, to laugh out.

Him, to long for.  
hím, a bear.  
hím, to smother.

Hín, dizzy.  
hín, plain.

Hiok, to disregard.

Hiong, malevolent; unlucky.  
hiông, masculine.

Hip, to steam.

Hit, to dangle.

Hiu, to cease.

Hiu\*, obscure.

hiú\*, a wadded jacket.  
hiú\*, rotten.

Hiuh, to brush; to flog.

Hm, to pant.

Hng, a region; dearth.  
hng, a garden.  
hng, distant.

Hngh, to blow the nose.

Hô, a river; a moat.  
hó, good; suitable.  
hò, to squander; false.  
hō, a mark; to protect.

Hoh, very.  
hób, a crane.

Hôi, a crab.

Hói\*, a small bivalve.  
hôi\*, to close, as a door.  
hôi\*, edible greens.

Hoih, narrow.  
bóih, to espy.

Hok, happiness; double.  
bók, garments; perhaps.

Hong, to confer; plentiful.  
hông, a swan; to sew; vast.  
hóng, salary; to intone.  
hông, to receive from a superior.

Hôu, bearded.  
hóu, to bale out water.  
hōu, rain; a princess.

Hóu\*, a tiger.

Hu, a husband; ashes; rotten.  
hû, a lake; a fox; charms.  
hú, a prefecture; to stoop.  
hù, a tutor; to hand over to.  
hũ, a wife; to help; to protect.  
hũ, to breathe out.

Hua, *clamor; to squander*  
 hûa, *glory; harmony; grain.*  
 hûa, *woe.*

Hua\*, *gratified.*  
 hûa\*, *lazy; to snore.*  
 hûa\*, *all.*  
 hûa\*, *to lean upon; a dike.*

Huah, *to yawn.*  
 huah, *to step.*

Hûai, *to cherish.*  
 hûai, *to despoil.*

Hûam, *every body or everything.*  
 hûam, *to overflow.*  
 hûam, *to offend; a law; grief.*

Huan, *foreign; to translate.*  
 hûan, *furthermore; a ring.*  
 hûan, *to return.*  
 hûan, *to transform; to peddle.*

Huang, *wind; to seal up.*  
 hûang, *to ward off; dread.*  
 hûang, *to imitate; to search out.*  
 hûang, *to relax.*

Huap, *a law.*

Huat, *to sprout.*  
 huât, *to punish; a cave.*

Hue, *a flower; lime.*  
 hûe, *to return.*  
 hûe, *fire; goods; a comrade.*  
 hûe, *to repent; a class; to teach.*  
 hûe, *to assemble.*

Hûe\*, *crosswise.*  
 hûe\*, *a cross-piece.*

Hueh, *blood.*

Hui, *to revolve; not so.*  
 hûi, *earthen ware.*  
 hûi, *plants.*  
 hûi, *to expend; the lungs.*

hûi, *grace.*  
 hûi, *woof.*

Hûi\*, *to dangle; wilted.*  
 hûi\*, *to roll about; to vilify; to ruin.]*

Hun, *smoke; to separate; confused.*  
 hûn, *the spirit; clouds; lines.*  
 hûn, *flour; a pigeon; entire.*  
 hûn, *to instruct; a last.*  
 hûn, *in disorder.*  
 hûn, *a share.*

Hut, *abruptly; a puff.*  
 hût, *the seed or stone in fruit; Buddha.]*

Hu, *vacant; a fair; to breathe*  
 hû, *fish. softly.]*  
 hû, *to assent to; that.*  
 hû, *to commit to.*

Hun, *abundant; elated.*  
 hûn, *spite.*

I, *he, she, or it; to trust; clothes;*  
 i, *barbarians; to move. from.]*  
 i, *idea.*  
 i, *strange; posterity.*

I\*, *round; a pellet.*  
 f, *a chair; because of; to rely on.*  
 i\*, *the swallow.*  
 i\*, *an ink-stone.*

Iâ, *esquire.*  
 iâ, *a wilderness.*  
 iâ, *to carry on the back.*  
 iâ, *also.*

Iâ\*, *to overcome; a camp; to carry*  
 iâ\*, *a shadow. around.]*

Iah, *to benefit; to vomit.*  
 iâh, *a butterfly; to beckon.*

Iak, *to restrict; to skip.*

Iam, *to geld.*

- iâm, salt; fiery.  
 iám, to spy; to shade.  
 iãm, flames.  
 iãm, glossy.
- Iang, the middle; visitation.  
 iâng, the male principle; to pub-  
 iáng, to nourish. [ish.]  
 iãng, mode; anxious care.
- Iap, to repress.  
 iáp, to flash; a hinge.
- Iau, hungry; a fairy.  
 iáu, to disturb; graceful.  
 iáu, rather; finally.  
 iàu, important.  
 iäu, refulgence.
- Iau\*, to lift slightly.
- Iaub, to ripple; to flicker.
- Ie, the loins; a waist band.  
 iê, a kiln; to sway.  
 ié, to bale out.  
 iê, to rattle.  
 iê, the kite.
- Iê\*, a sheep; to melt; the arbutus.  
 ié\*, to rear; to transmit orders.  
 iê\*, pattern or style.
- Ieh, a treaty; to guess.  
 iéh, medicine.
- Ien, tainted.  
 iên, a feast.  
 ién, remote; vexed.  
 ièn, edible bird's-nests.  
 iên, to desire ardently.
- Ih, to dampen.
- Im, sound; the female principle.  
 ím, licentiousness.  
 ím, to lead; a habit.  
 ìm, to shelter.
- In, smoke; a reason.  
 ñn, lead; to practice.  
 ín, to lead; a habit.  
 ìn, to answer.  
 in, a halo; to soar.
- Iók, appetite; to rear.
- Iông, glory; to serve for hire.  
 íong, everlasting.  
 òng, to crowd; to obstruct.  
 iðug, commission.
- Ip, a city; to salute with joined  
 hands.]
- It, one; recollect.  
 ít, to wave; ease.
- Iu, grieved.  
 iù, oil; by; to ramble.  
 iú, to allure; a friend.  
 iũ, the right hand; to help.  
 iũ, the pumelo.
- Iù\*, fine; young.
- Jê, feeble.
- Jêng, as ever; another.
- Jî, a child.  
 jî, two; a letter; a bail.
- Jiá, to incite.
- Jiák, if; frail.
- Jiám, to dye.
- Jiáng, to cry aloud.  
 jiăng, to give way to.
- Jiáu, crumpled; affluent.  
 jiáu, claws; to scratch.  
 jiäu, to pursue.
- Jiê, urine.
- Jièh, how?
- Jiên, like; of course.

Jiét, *hot.*

Jih, *twenty; to press.*

Jim, *patience.*

jim, *to sustain.*

jim, *to hold office.*

Jin, *charity; mankind.*

jín, *to confess.*

Jip, *to enter.*

Jit, *sun, or day.*

Jiû, *complaisant.*

Jók, *a mattress; to insult.*

Jóng, *velvet; deer's horns.*

jóng, *feathery.*

Jâ, *like; to respond; fertile.*

jâ, *more; the breast; young.*

jû, *to compare; an edict.*

Juah, *hot.*

Júan, *to compile.*

juân, *as you please; however.*

Juât, *pleased.*

Jûe, *to rub between the hands.*

jûe, *zealous.*

Jûi, *but; to consider.*

jûi, *to will.*

Jún, *to assent.*

jûn, *to fatten.*

jûn, *tough; intercalary.*

Jâ, *confusion; yet.*

jâ, *to spread out; to daub.*

jû, *fat.*

Ka, *the back; glue; to cut with*

ká, *to twist; to stir. shears.]*

kà, *to teach.*

kâ, *to bite.*

Ka', *oranges.*

kâ', *to carry in the mouth.*

ká', *to dare.*

kà', *leaven.*

Kah, *armor; to fit; and; to wrap.*

Kai, *ought; all.*

kâi, *one; with; a general classifier.]*

kâi, *a limit; to cover; mustard.*

Kak, *roof slats; grain; a horn;*

kák, *to throw. each.]*

Kam, *sweet; a jail; intestinal*

*worms.]*

kâm, *to hold in the mouth.*

kám, *to move the feelings; to*

kàm, *to oversee. cover.]*

Kai, *difficult; adultery.*

kán, *soap.*

Kang, *work; diligence; a river.*

káng, *to converse; a canal.*

kàng, *to descend.*

kāng, *collectively; and.*

Kap, *to join; to bind.*

káp, *to chatter.*

Kat, *to produce.*

Kau, *a hook; a ditch; to commit to.*

káu, *a monkey; to bestride.*

káu, *nine; a dog; tricky.*

kàu, *to arrive at; enough; entire.*

kāu, *thick.*

Kauh, *to roll up.*

Ke, *a family; more.*

kê, *a cangue.*

ké, *false.*

kè, *the price; to marry a hus.*

kê, *low. band.]*

Ke<sup>a</sup>, to plow; to weave.

ké<sup>a</sup>, a leaf stalk.

kè<sup>a</sup>, a path.

Keh, a partition; to degrade from office.

kéh, to obstruct; to oppose.

Kek, to distill; to excite.

kék, a manufactory; the extreme point.]

Keng, a bow; to pass by.

kéng, a prospect; to warn; a kèng, to honor; more. limit.]

Ki, a branch; dearth; to mock.

kí, a flag; chess.

kí, to point out; one's self; a year.

kí, a comrade; to record.

kí, to dislike; a courtesan.

Kí<sup>a</sup>, the margin; tongs.

kí<sup>a</sup>, to see; to remember.

Kia, to add; to commend.

kiá, supposing that.

kià, to hand over to another.

kiã, steep.

Kia<sup>a</sup>, a capital; classics; afraid.

kiã<sup>a</sup>, to walk.

kiã<sup>a</sup>, a child; now.

kiã<sup>a</sup>, a mirror.

kiã<sup>a</sup>, an item.

Kiah, to open up.

kiáh, wooden shoes.

Kiak, clean.

Kiam, together with.

kiám, saltish; frugal.

kiám, to diminish.

kiám, a sword.

Kiang, rigid; a limit.

kiáng, to compel.

Kiap, to plunder.

kiáp, to squeeze out.

Kiau, proud; with.

kiáu, to assist; to excite.

kiáu, to pry up.

Kiê, a bridge; the egg plant.

kiê, to call.

kiê, better.

Kieh, freight.

Kien, firm; to contribute; sparing.

kiên, to see.

kiên, vigorous; to set up.

Kiet, clean.

kiêt, to exhaust.

Kih, to lay up; as a wall.

Kim, gold; now.

kim, to restrain.

Kin, the present.

kin, straight.

Kiok, to address.

Kiong, polite.

Kip, to supply; impatient.

kip, to reach to.

Kit, to knit; a small orange.

Kiu, to contract.

kiú, a ball.

kiù, to save; to examine into.

kiũ, an error.

Kiuh, to spurt; a syringe.

Kng, light; a water jar; to carry.

kúg, a scroll.

kúg, to string on; steel.

Ko, leprosy; salve; a pole.

kó, grass or grain stems.

kò, to accuse; to row; a place.

Koh, strange; to hinder.

Koi, *fowls; a street; steps.*

kôi, *noisome odors.*

kói, *to alter; to unloose.*

kòì, *to contrive; the itch.*

kõi, *easy.*

Koi", *the shoulders.*

kói", *to select; a plait.*

kòì", *to sunder.*

kõi", *to carry under the arm.*

Koih, *double.*

kóih, *to press, as between two boards.]*

Kok, *a kingdom, grain; a gully.*

Kong, *merit; public.*

kông, *confused.*

kóng, *a tube.*

kõng, *to roil.*

Kou, *mold; dried up.*

kòu, *paste; to daub.*

kóu, *a drum; the male of quad-*

kòu, *to hire; jealous. rypeds.]*

kõu, *to rely upon.*

Ku, *a tortoise; to stoop.*

kú, *long time.*

kù, *to regard; a sentence; a*

kũ, *fear; utensils. cause.]*

kũ, *old.*

Kua, *a ballad.*

kúa, *to suspend; a cover.*

kũa, *together with; and.*

Kua", *an officer; the liver; a coffin; just.*

kúa", *cold; intermittent fever.*

kú", *to hasten; truly.*

kũ", *to carry with the hand.*

Kuah, *to cut; thirst.*

Kuai, *crafty.*

kúan, *a staff.*

kũan, *strange.*

Kuái", *ore.*

Kuák, *to swallow.*

Kuan, *a custom house; to observe.*

kúan, *to rule; to treat well.*

kùan, *experienced in.*

kũan, *fatigued.*

Kuang, *glory; to mislead.*

kúang, *extensive.*

Kuat, *to determine.*

Kue, *cucumber, melon, or squash.*

kûe, *to stumble upon.*

kúe, *cakes; fruit.*

kûe, *to pass by; to extinguish.*

Kue", *to close, as a door.*

Kueh, *to scrape.*

kuèh, *a half.*

Kuh, *to suck.*

Kui, *custom; a dial; a loom; to return.*

kúi, *a spirit; a machine; how*

kùì, *honorable. many.]*

kũì, *to kneel.*

Kûi", *high.*

kùì", *accustomed to.*

kũì", *a district; a chest.*

Kun, *a prince; an army.*

kún, *a petticoat.*

kún, *to boil.*

Kut, *a bone; to pound.*

kút, *smooth; to dig.*

Ku, *to dwell; the skirt.*

kù, *custom; to elevate.*

kũ, *a saw.*

kũ, *to ward off; evidence.*

Kuh, *to stammer.*

**Kun**, roots; tendons; a catty; a  
kũn, to congeal. napkin.]

kũn, diligent.

kũn, to exert one's strength.

kũn, near; the gizzard.

**Kit**, viscid.

**Kha**, the foot.

khá, adroit; how? or what?

khà, to break; to strike.

**Khah**, too; to roll about.

**Khai**, to open.

khái, a model; armor.

khài, to sum up; generous.

**Khái**, black ness of the skin.

**Khak**, truly; shell or husk.

**Kham**, worthy; a shrine.

khám, to chop; a pit.

khàm, to cover.

khăm, cymbals.

**Khan**, to lead.

**Khang**, empty; a hole.

khàng, a wide couch; to resist.

**Khap**, to seal; the whole.

kháp, to hit against.

**Khat**, a knot.

**Khau**, a lot; to scratch.

kháu, the mouth; to question.

khàu, to cry; to strike the head  
on the ground.

**Khaub**, dry and crisp.

kháuh, stiff and hard.

**Khe**, the sound of breaking crock-  
ery.]

**Khe**, a ravine.

**Kheh**, a guest; a magpie.

**Khék**, to carve; crooked.

**Kheng**, a basket; to smelt.

khêng, a bracket, for a wall  
khéng, willing. lamp.]

khòng, to congratulate.

không, the rainbow.

**Khi**, strange; tilted.

khi, a set time; strange; to pray.

khí, the teeth.

khì, air; utensils; to reject.

**Khi**, to cling to; forceps.

**Khia**, an odd number; meager.

khia, to bestride; to erect.

khia, elevated.

khia, to stand; to reside.

khia, perpendicular.

**Khiah**, a cleft.

**Khia**, behold! or oh!

**Khiâm**, a stamp; to seal.

khiam, to owe.

khiam, frugal.

**Khiang**, brogue.

khiaang, strong.

**Khiap**, vicious; fearful.

**Khiau**, destitute; to rap.

khiau, elevated.

khiau, ingenious; pretty.

khiau, an aperture.

**Khiô**, to detain illegally.

**Khie**, to beware of.

**Khiéh**, to pick up; to collect.

khieh, to take in the hand.

**Khién**, to send away; to blame  
angrily.]

**Khiet**, insolent; wily.

**Khìh**, *clean; a little bit.*

**Khim**, *by, or from the emperor.*  
khim, *to seize; birds.*

**Khìn**, *light in weight.*

**Khiok**, *distorted.*

**Khuòng**, *poor; a cricket.*  
khuòng, *anxious.*

**Khip**, *to inhale.*  
khip, *cautions.*

**Khiu**, *to entreat.*  
khiu, *scurf; to grasp.*  
khiu, *trembling with fear, or cold.]*

**Khng**, *chaff.*  
khng, *to exhort; to store up.*

**Kho**, *a javelin; a sauce pan.*  
khó, *to dry up.*  
khò, *bullion.*

**Khoh**, *to cough up.*  
khoh, *solicitous.*

**Khoi**, *a river; to share.*  
khòi, *a deed, or covenant.*

**Khói**, *to beat lightly.*

**Khoih**, *pois; to press tightly.*  
khóih, *gently.*

**Khok**, *to clear the throat; tyrannical.]*

**Khóng**, *an orifice.*  
khòng, *to accuse; vacant.*

**Khon**, *a hoop, or circle; dregs.*  
khón, *bitter.*  
khón, *trousers; a treasury.*

**Khu**, *to urge; to restrain.*  
khù, *to sit on the heels.*

khũ, *a mortar.*

**Khua**, *to boast; the thighs.*  
khua, *to rely upon; anxious.*

**Khua**, *slowly.*  
khua, *comfortable; loose.*

**Khuah**, *wide.*

**Khuai**, *cheerful.*

**Khuak**, *to stretch.*

**Khuan**, *ample; a frame.*  
khuan, *authority; to coil.*

**Khuang**, *to overthrow.*  
khuang, *insane.*  
khuang, *much more; empty.*  
khuang, *aslant.*

**Khuat**, *terminated.*

**Khuo**, *a crucible; the chief.*  
khue, *quickly; to divine.*

**Khueh**, *to lack.*

**Khub**, *to stew.*

**Khui**, *to open; separated.*  
khui, *to examine; the sunflower.*  
khui, *to consider; to deceive.*  
khui, *the breath.*  
khui, *ashamed.*

**Khun**, *a flock.*  
khun, *to tie up.*  
khun, *a moment; famished.*

**Khut**, *a pit; to wrong.*  
khut, *in extremity.*

**Khù**, *a highway.*  
khù, *to go.*

**Khun**, *diligent; celery.*  
khun, *to entreat.*

**Khut**, *to beg; to give.*  
khut, *a stake.*



**La**, to take along.

lā, tallow, or lard.

lā, sufficient; to stir up.

lā, to enjoy.

**Lah**, to carry over the arm.

lāh, wax; pungent.

**Lai**, to come, pears or apples.

lāi, within.

lāi, sharp; talented.

**Lak**, to retire.

lāk, six; pleasure.

**Lam**, to spread over loosely.

lām, south; male; blue.

lām, the black olive; to hug.

lām, mire.

lām, exercise.

**Lan**, difficult; a balustrade.

lān, lazy.

lān, calamity.

**Lang**, wide apart.

lāng, deaf; scales; a cage.

lāng, a bag.

lāng, waves;

**Lap**, a wrapper; to dip out.

lāp, to pay for purpose of revenue.]

**Lāt**, strength.

**Lau**, the tide; to toil; a loft; to detain.

lāu, aged; the siri leaf.

lāu, to purge.

lāu, venerable.

lāu, to leak.

**Lauh**, dilapidated.

**Le**, a final particle.

**Leh**, the sound of thunder.

lēh, to cut open; a scratch.

**Lèk**, green; dry land; scrofula.

**Leng**, a small bell.

lêng, spirit; power; besides; a

lêng, to push. dragon.]

lêng, to stand on tiptoe.

lêng, a law; eloquent.

lêng, joists; loose.

**Li**, a particle denoting certainty.

lì, to disperse; glass; a fence.

lì, a village; rules; to govern; the plum.

lì, profit; stern; dysentery.

lì, to adjust.

**Liā**, bô-liā, "no truth in it."

**Liah**, to seize; to plunder.

**Liak**, in general.

**Liam**, or niam; to take up with the fingers.

liām, a reaping hook; sticky; a

liām, to pinch. screen]

liām, to remember; to enshroud.

liām, to recite from memory.

**Liàng**, cool; good; to deliberate.

liáng, two; skilled.

liáng, to estimate; clear.

**Liap**, a of small round classifier objects.

**Liáu**, fetters; a hut; a companion.

liáu, finished.

liáu, to gallop.

liáu, to estimate.

**Liauh**, slipshod.

**Liē**, to trim off.

**Lieh**, to endure.

lēh, in general; cold.

**Liên**, to commiserate; to connect.

lién, reputation.

lién, to practice.

- Liét, *to arrange ; impetuous.*  
 Lih, *the footstalk of a flower.*  
   lih, *to tear open, or apart.*  
 Lim, *to descend ; a forest ; the eaves.*  
   lim, *to hold in the hand.*  
 Lin, *near ; damask.*  
   lin, *a wheel.*  
 Lip, *at the point of.*  
   lip, *established.*  
 Lit, *stretched at full length.*  
 Liu, *to slip.*  
   liá, *to go from place to place.*  
   liá, *the willow ; to scoop out.*  
   liù, *a whirlpool.*  
   liū, *to strangle, as with a cord.*  
 Lo, *straight ; balmy.*  
   lô, *a gong ; a mule ; turbid.*  
   lô, *sorrowful ; careless.*  
 Loh, *to fall.*  
 Lôi, *to plow.*  
   lói, *manners or etiquette.*  
   lòi, *to assault.*  
   lôi, *a skimmer used by cooks.*  
 Lôi, *a bamboo hat.*  
 Lok, *wet with rain ; to rattle.*  
   lôk, *to record ; salary ; a chart.*  
 Lôm, *confused sound.*  
 Long, *a spherical bell.*  
   lông, *thick, as liquids ; abundant.]*  
   lông, *to assemble or collect.*  
   lông, *globular.*  
   lông, *to trifle with.*  
 Lop, *water thick with mud.*  
 Lâu, *a furnace.*  
   lôu, *to hate.*  
   lòu, *to disclose.*  
   lôu, *to pickle.*  
   lôu, *the dew.*  
 Lu, *a hummock.*  
   lô, *to take captive ; the skull.*  
   lú, *reiterated ; stupid.*  
   lũ, *to bribe.*  
 Lũa, *a kind of basket.*  
   lũa, *to falsely accuse.*  
 Luah, *to scorch.*  
   luáh, *peppery ; to smooth.*  
 Luân, *the peaks of a hill ; imperial.*  
   luán, *a pleasant warmth.*  
   luân, *confusion.*  
   luân, *to love ardently.*  
 Luat, *insignificant.*  
 Lut, *to gulp down.*  
 Lôi, *thunder ; to grind in a mortar.*  
   lúi, *to classify ; a rampart.*  
   lùi, *small pimples.*  
   lũ, *to weep.*  
   lũ, *class or species.*  
 Lun, *short.*  
   lân, *a wheel ; lost in perdition.*  
   lún, *to restrain passion.*  
   lũn, *to discourse upon.*  
   lũn, *to trample upon ; a treatise.*  
 Lut, *to slip out ; lopped off.*  
   lút, *a fixed law.*  
 Lự, *a small iron shovel.*  
   lộ, *an ass.*  
   lộ, *you.*  
   lộ, *to burnish.*  
   lữ, *anxious or troubled about.*  
 M̄, *an elderly woman.*  
   m̄, *will not.*  
   m̄, *an adverb of negation.*

Ma, a waiting woman.  
má, grand mother.

Mái<sup>2</sup>, to bury.  
mài<sup>2</sup>, do not, or do not want.  
mãi<sup>2</sup>, to wax old.

Mak, the eye; to spot.

Mán, to pull.  
mān, slow.

Máng, hurried; fierce.  
máng, mosquitoes.  
mǎng, a net.  
māng, to dream.

Mau, to wrap.  
máu, rank grass; a spear.  
mǎu, mien; to contract work.

Mauh, to sell in the lot.

Mé<sup>2</sup>, blindness; night.  
mé<sup>2</sup>, quick; fierce.  
mē<sup>2</sup>, to scold.

Meh, to bleat.  
mēh, the pulse.

Mēng, clear.  
méng, stern.  
mēng, commands; Mencius.

Mi<sup>2</sup>, closed eyes.  
mǐ<sup>2</sup>, the cotton plant; to delude.  
mǐ<sup>2</sup>, to flatter; a riddle.  
mǐ<sup>2</sup>, wheat flour.

Miá<sup>2</sup>, a name.  
miá<sup>2</sup>, <sup>life</sup> obscure; vast.  
miǎu<sup>2</sup>, mysterious.

Mién, no need of; to commiserate;  
to force.]

Mih, what?

Mín, the people.  
mín, no need of.

mín, the countenanc.

Mit, to destroy.

Môg, a door, or gate.  
môg, evening.  
mōg, to enquire.

Mo<sup>2</sup>, ferns.  
mô<sup>2</sup>, hair or feathers; a devil.  
mó<sup>2</sup>, not good.  
mō<sup>2</sup>, a tomb.  
mō<sup>2</sup>, to hope, or expect.

Moh, a film.

Mók, harmony; a shepherd; alone.

Mông, a device; dim sighted; to  
touch.]  
móng, certain, as a certain per-  
mòng, to barter. son.]  
mōng, luxuriant.

Mou<sup>2</sup>, used for mong in some cases.

Mua<sup>2</sup>, a shawl.  
múa<sup>2</sup>, hemp; to deceive.  
mù<sup>2</sup>, to-morrow.

Muân, a kind of curtain.

Muat, the end.

Mûe<sup>2</sup>, measles; congee.  
múc<sup>2</sup>, each.  
mûe<sup>2</sup>, obscure.  
mûe<sup>2</sup>, younger sister.

Muēh, a thing; to handle.

Môi<sup>2</sup>, small.  
múi<sup>2</sup>, beautiful.

Mut, the corners of the mouth.  
mút, an epidemic; to perish.

Nā, bailed baskets; a forest.  
ná, to lay hold of; a question  
nǎ, to scorch. mark.]  
nā, a bamboo cable.

Nah, *filthy*.

Nái, *a lady of position*.

nài, *to blush*.

nãi, *to endure; to rely upon; a plum.*

Nak, *to seize with claws; to knead*.

Nam, *the same as lam*.

Nán, *we, including the hearer*.

Nâng, *a man, or mankind*.

Nap, *mellow or soft*.

náp, *to receive; assent or approval.*

Nấu, *anger; the brain*.

nấu, *to make a disturbance*.

Nê, *to hang clothes on a line*.

nê, *cold*.

nê, *an intensifying particle*.

Nêh, *dilatory*.

Nêk, *flesh; to suffocate*.

Neng, *same as leng*.

Ni, *to carry in the hand*.

nì, *a year; woolen cloth; viscid*

nì, *to dye.* juice.]

nì, *milk*.

Niá, *a collar; the side of a mountain, facing towards.* tain.]

niã, *the nape*.

Niam, *same as liam*.

Niap, *to lay folds*.

niáp, *to pinch; to run a seam*.

Niau, *to tickle*.

niàu, *to wrinkle*.

Niauh, *to squirm*.

Niê, *a female; to measure*.

mê, *a tail*.

niê, *to yield*.

Nien, *same as lien*.

Nih, *to wink; to walk softly*.

Nín, *you, plural form*.

Niú, *a button*.

niũ, *to mislead*.

Nh̄g, *a gentleman*.

nh̄g, *females; soft*.

nh̄g, *eggs*.

Nó, *timid; to exert strength*.

nô, *two*.

nô, *anger; a particle denoting certainty.*

Noh, *sudden lameness*.

Nôi, *the lotus; the lichi*.

nôi, *solid*.

noi, *to grind down, as with the heel.*

Nou, *a child; a slave*.

Nũa, *to hinder*.

nũa, *saliva*.

nũa, *corrupted*.

Nuan, *same as huan*.

Núc, *hunger*.

Nuch, *to pick up with the fingers*.

Nui, *same as lui*.

Nút, *slow of speech*.

Ng, *rice plants for transplanting*

ng, *yellow; the citron*.

ng, *a sleeve*.

Ngà, *foolish*.

ngã, *robust; to snarl, as dogs*.

Ngái, *to persist*.

ngãi, *a bank or shore*.

Ngaih, to endure hardship.

Ngák, the crocodile; a wife's parents].

Ngám, a precipice.  
ngám, a mortise.

Ngân, chilly; a word.  
ngân, the eye.  
ngân, to temper.

Ngau, dissatisfied.  
ngáu, to simmer.

Ngauh, to make sport.

Ngê, stiff.

Ngék, to resist.

Ngêng, to meet.

Ngí, fit and right; decorum.  
ngí, to determine.  
ngí, righteousness.

Ngía, handsome; elegant.

Ngíak, cruel; evils.

Ngiam, stern.  
ngiam, of commanding presence.  
ngiam, to examine officially.

Ngíang, to look upward.

Ngíáp, an occupation.

Ngiau, a cat; grappling irons.

Ngien, to search into carefully.

Ngiet, to gnaw.

Ngim, to sing.

Ngô, stupid; a nook.  
ngô, to meet; to arouse.

Ngôh, mental imbecility.

Ngoi, to triturate.

Ngoih, to gnash the teeth.

Ngông, clownish.

Ngón, disobedient; a squad of men.  
ngõu, five; 11 A.M. to 1 P.M.

Ngúan, a fountain; the first cause.  
ngúan, mulish.  
ngúan, to desire.  
nguan, a vow.

Ngúi, dangerous.  
ngũ, false.

Ngûn, silver.

Ngut, even or till.  
ngút, to endure.

O, a ridge, or bank; to shelter  
ô, oysters. thieves.]  
ô, a bay.  
ô, to recline.  
ô, oh!

Oh, difficult; to eructate.  
ôh, to learn; to narrate.

Oi, to crowd.  
ôi, shoes.  
ói, short of stature.  
ôi, to force one's way.  
ôi, able.

Oi\*, to delay.  
ôi\*, leisure.

Oih, narrow.

Ok, a dwelling.

Ong, to slap; an old man.  
ông, to jolt a baby.

Op, to live on another.

Ou, black.  
ôu, a lake; a round shallow  
ôu, the taro. basket.]

Pa, a father.  
pá, satisfied, or full; a target.  
pà, the leopard.  
pā, to suffice; to assume a false  
name.

- Pai, a shield; a raft; to arrange.  
 pái, to spread out.  
 pài, to worship.  
 pāi, to destroy.
- Pak, north; to strip off; a string of.  
 pāk, to bind.
- Pân, a pitcher or ewer.  
 pân, a small boat.
- Pang, a board; to fall away.  
 pâng, a room.  
 pàng, to loosen.  
 pǎng, to slander.
- Pat, to know; sign of past tense.
- Pau, to wrap up,  
 páu, to protect.  
 pǎu, violent.
- Pauh, pimples; to sprout.
- Pê, a rake; to creep; to scratch.  
 pé, a bundle.  
 pě, a father.
- Pe", to break apart.  
 pē", level; a scaffold.  
 pé", to guard.  
 pè", a handle.  
 pē", sickness.
- Peh, one hundred; to open; to  
 pēh, white. climb.]
- Pek, earnest; to urge.
- Pêng, to trust to.  
 péng, to uphold.  
 pēng, and.
- Pi, stone tablets; to put on a bind-  
 pī, the spleen. ing.]  
 pí, that, or those; to compare.  
 pì, to carry on the back; the arm.  
 pǐ, to prepare; to shade.  
 pī, to escape.
- Pi", the cue; the margin; a whip.  
 pī", to transform.  
 pī", to braid.
- Pia", a soldier; ice.  
 piā", to repeat what one has  
 piá", cake. heard.]
- Piah, a partition wall.
- Piak, to throb.  
 piák, to manipulate.
- Piang, to cuff.  
 piàng, to rap.
- Piau, to make known.
- Pie, a banner.  
 piè, to mount scrolls; to bleach.
- Pien, a boundary.  
 pién, thin.  
 pièn, to transform.  
 piēn, to dispute; convenient.
- Piét, to separate.
- Pih, a turtle.
- Pin, a beach.  
 pín, a petition; series.  
 pìn, everywhere.  
 pīn, to reach to; ready.
- Pit, a pen; certainly.  
 pīt, to finish.
- Piu, to gush out.
- Piuh, to germinate.  
 piüh, to thrust in.
- Póg, one's own.  
 pōg, cooked rice.
- Po, glass; a slope.
- Poh, to dispute.  
 pōh, thin; poor; a weir.

Poi, a screw-driver; side of mouth.

Poi", spotted, or pitted.

pôi", border; or side.

pôi", printing blocks, or type;  
to turn.]

Poih, eight.

póih, to pull out.

Pók, a slave.

Pòng, to burst.

pông, luxuriant.

Pou, a level space; a port.

póu, an axe; to mend; dried  
meats.]

pòu, cloth; to transplant.

pòu, a step; to chew.

Pu, to kick.

pû, to boil; a gourd.

pû, wealthy.

pû, to capture.

pû, to brood.

Pûa, to scatter abroad; to winnow.

Pua", to transport.

pûa", a plate; to remove.

pûa", one half.

pûa", to brush off.

Puah, a glazed earthen dish.

puáh, to gamble; to fall.

Puân, to revolt.

Puât, to elevate.

Pue, to fly; a cup; divining blocks.

pûe, to indemnify.

pûe, to flutter about.

pûe, the back; precious.

pûe, contrary to; fold, as "two-  
fold, ten-fold."

pûe, to dry by the fire.

Pueh, to revile.

Pûh, to thrust; flabby.

Pui, to commiserate.

pûi, fat.

pûi, prickly heat.

pûi, to bark.

Pun, to divide; to give.

pûn, to blow with the mouth.

pûn, one's own.

pûn, manure.

Put, to fill a basket with earth;  
not.]

Pha, a bladder.

phă, a blister.

Pha", to fear.

phà", spongy.

Phah, to beat.

Phái, evil.

phài, a branch of a family.

Phak, to lie with the face down.

phák, to dry in the sun.

Phàn, to look lovingly on.

Phang, fragrant; a bee, or wasp.

phăng, a sail; bamboo mats.

pháng, to spin.

phàng, a button loop.

phăng, a crack or fissure.

Phau, to abandon.

pháu, a long-robe; to rage.

pháu, to run.

phàu, a large gun.

Phè, a kerchief.

phě, long robes.

Phé", even.

Phèh, to flit.

Phek, amber; to open up.

Pheng, to decoct for food.



- phông, *peaceful ; friends.*
- Phî, *fatigue ; the temper.*  
 phî, *to despise ; a scab.*  
 phî, *to compare.*
- Phi", *selfish.*  
 phî", *the nose ; to smell.*
- Phia", *the sides ; to throw down.*  
 phiâ", *a level tract.*  
 phià", *a dower.*
- Phiah, *mean ; a propensity.*  
 phiâh, *neglected or unused.*
- Phiak, *to whisk.*
- Phiau, *a notice ; to drift.*  
 phiâu, *lewd.*
- Phiê, *duck weed ; the tender blade*  
 phiê, *a warrant. of plants.]*  
 phiê, *fish bladders.*
- Phien, *a section or leaf of a book.*  
 phiên, *to deceive ; a section of an*  
*orange.]*
- Phiet, *the sound of a falling object.*
- Phil, *to fall flat.*
- Phin, *poor ; to impinge.*  
 phín, *grade ; to censure.*
- Phit, *to match or mate.*
- Phin, *to slip out of.*
- Phó, *somewhat.*  
 phô, *an old woman.*  
 phô, *to hold in the arms.*
- Phoh, *to cleave.*
- Phoi, *to pare off ; to reply officially.*
- Phoi", *tares.*
- Phok, *sincere ; bulging.*  
 phók, *to spy.*
- Phông, *disheveled ; a booth.*  
 phóng, *to grasp with both hands.*  
 phông, *to pop ; shaggy.*
- Phou, *to spread out ; bran.*  
 phou, *every where ; a list.*  
 phou, *ten lí, about 3.5 miles ; a*  
*shop.]*  
 phou, *a memorandum book.*
- Phû, *to float.*
- Phûa, *an old woman.*  
 phûa, *to break ; to split.*
- Phûa", *a verdict.*  
 phûa", *a comrade.*
- Phuah, *to fan ; a stroke in writing.*
- Phûan, *to coil around.*  
 phûan, *to judge.*
- Phuat, *self-willed.*
- Phue, *unbaked clay utensils.*  
 phûc, *skin, or rind.*  
 phûc, *a mate ; condiments.*  
 phûc, *a blanket or quilt.*
- Phueh, *to chat ; froth.*
- Phuh, *weak in influence.*
- Phûi, *to spit.*
- Phun, *to run.*  
 phûn, *a basin ; a tomb.*  
 phûn, *to cleave.*  
 phûn, *to spatter.*
- Sà, *to kill ; irregular teeth.*
- Sa", *three ; a jacket.*
- Sah, *to catch in the hand.*
- Sai, *west ; the lion ; to pour out ;*  
*private ; a master work man ;*  
 sái, *to send ; excrement ; to sail.*





Sim, *the heart.*

sím, *to weigh evidence.*

sím, *extremely.*

Sin, *new; the body; to vindicate.*

sín, *Gods, either the true God or*

sín, *to act carefully. false gods.]*

sín, *faith, or sincerity.*

sín, *a residue.*

Sip, *damp.*

síp, *to collect; to irritate.*

Sit, *to lose.*

sít, *real or true; wings or fins.*

Siu, *to adorn; to accept; a comb.*

siú, *to swim.*

siú, *a broom; to guard.*

siú, *cultivated; to embroider.*

siú, *to give; to receive.*

siú, *longevity.*

Sng, *frost; sour; to ache.*

sng, *to play.*

sng, *to reckon; garlic.*

So, *the motion of snakes; to cause discord.]*

só, *a lock; a place; to spend.*

só, *to batter down, as a door.*

Soh, *a cord; snow.*

Soi, *to neigh.*

sói, *to wash.*

sói, *small.*

Soi", *first or before.*

Soih, *to wedge up; to tuck in.*

Sok, *to shrink; solitary.*

sók, *to belong to; to ransom; common.]*

Song, *slack.*

sóng, *to chant; to litigate.*

Sou, *crisp.*

sou, *flavor; meager.*

Su, *ought; necessary; to lose.*

sú, *summer's heat.*

sù, *a few; benignant.*

sù, *to discourse upon.*

Sua, *sand; a shark.*

súa, *to move from one place to another.]*

Sua", *a hill, or mountain.*

súa", *to produce.*

súa", *thread; to scatter.*

Suah, *to slay; to lodge.*

Suái", *the mango.*

Suak, *to mold in clay.*

Suan, *to promulgate.*

súan, *to select.*

súan, *to calculate.*

súan, *to gush forth.*

Suáng, *cheerful.*

Suat, *to take under false pretences.*

suát, *to speak slightly of.*

Sue, *wearing away.*

sue, *weak.*

sue, *to rent.*

Sueh, *to expound; a brush.*

Suh, *to suck.*

suh, *to spurt out.*

Sui, *although; a rain coat.*

súi, *to accord with; to dangle.*

súi, *attractive.*

súi, *to accord with; auspicious.*

súi, *the heads of grain.*

Sun, *a grand child.*

sún, *to follow; ten days.*

sún, *a shoot; a tenon; to injure.*

sún, *humble.*

sún, *to obey.*

Sut, sawdust; a cricket; to beat out.]

sút, to narrate; to swoop.

Su, to think.

sù, heirs; to worship; ancestors.

sù, chronicles.

sù, to bestow.

sù, an island; to serve.

sù, an affair.

Ta, dry.

tà, to cover.

Ta', to carry; now.

tá', the gall.

tà', a burden; to speak.

tā', to ram down.

tā', to err.

Tab, to stick on; to pile up; to com-  
táh, to set the foot on. mit to.]

Tai, silly; millet.

tái, a stand.

tái, sediment; evil.

tái, a rudder; great.

Tak, to waste; to gore; to nod.

ták, poisonous.

Tam, to be responsible for.

tám, wet.

tám, to dip and wet.

Tán, to wait for.

tán, only.

Tang, winter; east; the middle.

tàng, copper; a tube; together.

tàng, a faction.

tàng, to sting.

tàng, heavy; to shake.

tàng, ballast.

Táp, to answer; the pattering of  
rain.]

Tát, to perceive; the value of a  
thing.]

Tau, to detain.

táu, dice.

táu, to pray; to exchange; an  
island.]

tàu, a nest; to attain to.

táu, a way; to rob; to lead.

táu, beans; a clause; small-pox.

Tê, tea.

tê, to filter.

Te', the heel.

tê', to obstruct.

tê', to squeeze in one hand.

Teh, to crush.

Tek, bamboo; moral excellence.

têk, a deer; an opponent; a fife.

Teng, a lamp; a nail.

têng, a layer; an honorary por-  
teng, the top; to weigh. tal.]

têng, to nail; an anchor.

têng, to rear, as a horse.

Ti, low.

tì, a pool; what?

tì, wisdom; to wear a cap.

tì, a younger brother.

tì, the earth; a foundation.

Ti', to bind.

tì', full.

Tia, a respectful term for father.

Tia', to touch slightly.

tiá', a level space; a petition.

tiá', an iron pan.

tiá', an ingot of silver.

tiá', fixed or certain; only.

Tiah, to pluck.

tiáh, to buy grain.

Tiak, to rap with a knocker.

Tiam, an anvil; a chopping block.

tiām, sweet.

tiám, a spot.

tiām to hide; a shop.

tiām, silent; quiet.

Tiáp, a card; a butterfly.

Tiau, to engrave; to wither.

tiâu, a stripe; a perch.

tiâu, to suspend.

tiâu, to summon; an omen.

tiâu, to toss; to cast away.

Tiê, the tides.

tiê, to shudder; to rebound.

Tiê" to pretend.

tiê", a level space.

tiê", a chosen head.

tiê", to fish with a hook; to open,  
as the eyes; a curtain; account.

Tiêh, an emphatic particle.

Tien, to stumble; upset.

tiên, lightning.

Tiét, the child of a brother.

Tih, a drop.

tih, a small plate.

Tim, to warm up food.

tím, to sink.

Tin, to invert; to jingle.

tín, creeping plants; dust.

tín, the centre.

tín, a rank of soldiers.

Tit, to attain.

tit, straight.

Tiu, to cast away

tiú, tally sticks; thin, soft silk.

tiú, a species of hemp; growing  
rice.]

Tôg, long; the intestines; a hall.

tóg, to return; times.

tóg, to pawn; a meal.

tóg, to sunder; ten feet.

tóg, to meet.

To, a knife.

tô, to flee.

tô, short; to fall over.

tô, to pour out; the left side.

tô, to be present, or doing.

tô, a pocket; a generation.

Tòa, a girdle.

tòa, a rudder.

tòa, large.

Toa", only, or alone.

tôa", an altar; to thrum.

tôa", indolent.

tôa", to cut in stone.

Toah, to scold.

Toh, a table; to peek, as birds.

tòh, to choose; to take fire, or  
blaze.]

Toi, a dike.

tôi, to subscribe; a hoof.

tôi, the base, or bottom; inside.

Tói", to mortgage.

tôi", a threshold; with numbers,  
forms the ordinal.

tôi", indigo; hard, or dense.

Toih, narrow, or contracted.

Tok, to chop off; an overseer.

tók, to drive out; lone; to pro-  
fane.

Tong, the middle; faithful.

tóng, to understand clearly.

- tông, *to hit the centre ; to ache.*  
 tống, *to excite.*
- Tôu, *a map, or drawing.*  
 tóu, *the belly.*  
 tōu, *a ferry.*
- Tu, *a heap ; to put to death.*  
 tū, *a cupboard.*  
 tú, *to prop up ; to abut ; to hap-*  
 tũ, *to obstruct.* pen.]
- Túan, *tortuous.*  
 túan, *to decide judicially.*
- Tuat, *to criticise and expunge.*
- Tùe, *to follow ; to baste.*  
 tũe, *to exchange.*
- Tui, *to pursue.*  
 tui, *to beat.*  
 tui, *to pull.*  
 tui, *a pestle.*  
 tui, *to dangle ; a company.*
- Tun, *a heap ; dull.*  
 tũn, *the lips.*  
 tún, *to store ; a base.*  
 tũn, *to tremble ; to jerk.*  
 tũn, *to put in order.*
- Tut, *short.*  
 tũt, *suddenly ; to burnish.*
- Tu, *swine.*  
 tũ, *a hoe ; to subtract.*  
 tũ, *chopsticks.*
- Tha, *he, she, or it.*
- Tha', *plain, or level.*  
 thã', *to cover over.*
- Thah, *a pagoda or tower.*  
 tháh, *to pile on.*
- Thai, *a violent wind ; a seive.*  
 thãi, *a raised platform ; to kill.*  
 thái, *leprosy.*
- thãi, *to wait for.*
- Thak, *to read.*
- Tham, *to covet.*  
 thâm, *phlegm ; deep pools in a river.*  
 thâm, *to feel and search.*  
 thâm, *to step in the mud.*
- Thàn, *to earn.*
- Thang, *the wherewithal.*  
 thâng, *worms ; cap-tiles.*  
 tháng, *a bucket or tub.*  
 thàng, *to pass through.*  
 thâng, *to touch.*
- Thap, *a depression.*  
 tháp, *to cave in.*
- That, *a cork ; to kick.*
- Thau, *to steal.*  
 thâu, *the head.*  
 thàu, *to blow, as the wind.*
- Thẽ, *the jelly fish.*
- The', *to pole a boat.*  
 thẽ', *to push up with the hands.*  
 thẽ', *to prop up.*
- Théh, *a dwelling.*
- Thep, *to ascend.*
- Theng, *a window ; to correct.*  
 thêng, *to rest.*  
 thêng, *to wait for.*
- Thi, *sticky.*  
 thi, *moss ; to cry.*  
 thi, *the body.*  
 thi, *to shave ; to tear.*  
 thi, *the piles.*
- Thi', *heaven ; to add to.*  
 thi', *to sew.*



Thia<sup>n</sup>, to hear; a parlor.

thiã<sup>n</sup>, a journey.

thiã<sup>n</sup>, to ache.

Thiah, to take to pieces.

Thiam, to add to.

thiãm, tranquil.

thiãm, excessively; to flatter.

Thiàng, joyous.

Thiap, to make up; visiting cards.

thiáp, to lay up in a pile.

Thiatt, to step over.

thiatt, to harmonize.

thiàu, to leap, or dance.

thiàu, a pillar.

Thie, to pick up, or out.

thiè, to sell grain.

Thien, heaven.

Thiet, to recall; discerning.

Thih, wrought iron.

Thim, to sink.

Thin, to state.

thín, to irritate.

Thiok, to lay up in store.

Thit-thô, to recreate.

Thiu, a plane; a hem.

thiũ, undecided.

Thng, soup.

thng, sugar.

thng, to take off clothing; to scald.

thng, the elbow joint.

thng, to poke with a stick.

Tho, the womb.

thô, the peach.

thó, to ask for; secure.

thò, to draw back.

Thoh, to entrust to.

thòh, a camel.

Thoi, a hair pin.

thói, the body.

thòi, in place of.

Thói<sup>n</sup> to look.

Thoih, to bolster up.

thóih, to pant; to gasp.

Thok, to push upward.

Thong, to see clearly.

thông, a youth; the pupil; alike.

thóng, a grave.

thòng, distressing.

thông, to understand thoroughly.

Thou, earth.

thóu, territory; determined to.

thòu, to vomit; a hare.

Thũ, a disciple; to daub.

Thua, to drag along.

thùa, to take along with.

Thua<sup>n</sup>, to rate.

thũa<sup>n</sup>, sandal-wood.

thũa<sup>n</sup>, to weed.

thũa<sup>n</sup>, coal.

Thuah, an otter; to wash rice.

Thúan, to promulgate.

Thue, broken down.

thúe, a boil.

thúe, pulpy.

Thuh, to punch a hole through paper.]

Thui, a ladder.

thúi, a hammer; or mallet.

thúi, the thigh.

thúi, to sag.

Thun, *to swallow*  
     thûn, *soot.*  
     thûn, *to fill with earth.*  
 Thut, *to slip out of; to degrade.*  
 Thû, *to loosen garden soil.*  
 U, *filthy; vast; to call out.*  
     û, *joy.*  
     û, *wings.*  
     û, *to loathe; a bank.*  
     û, *to have, or to be.*  
 Uâ, *whereby.*  
     úa, *I; to lean on.*  
     ûa, *much.*  
 Ua°, *tranquil; a saddle.*  
     uá°, *a bowl.*  
     uà°, *a case in law; late.*  
     uâ°, *drought.*  
     uã°, *to barter.*  
 Uáh, *alive.*  
 Uai, *askew; to excavate.*  
     uái, *to sprain.*  
 Uai°, *the creaking sound of a door.*  
 Uáh°, *to veer.*  
 Uak, *to flame up.*  
     uák, *to obtain.*  
 Uan, *bent; to turn.*  
     uân, *because; finished.*  
     uàn, *to dislike.*  
 Uang, *ample.*  
     uâng, *a king.*

    uáng, *to depart.*  
     uăng, *flourishing.*  
 Uat, *to turn.*  
     uát, *to overstep.*  
 Ue, *a sauce pan; to shelter thieves.*  
     uê, *a half; downy.*  
     uè, *to sooth; to infect; filthy.*  
     uê, *to go with as an escort.*  
     uê, *words; to sketch or paint.*  
 Ueh, *to retch.*  
     uêh, *a line or stroke; to mark off.*  
 Ui, *to heal; a cover; the placenta.*  
     úi, *to surround; a mast.*  
     úi, *to depute.*  
     úi, *to dread.*  
     úi, *wherefore.*  
     úi, *a place; because of.*  
 Un, *wild; an epidemic.*  
     ún, *we, (the speakers); firm.*  
     ùn, *to immerse.*  
     un, *to turn in a circuit.*  
 Ut, *to iron; to bend by heating;*  
     *surly.*  
     út, *to sleep; turn back.*  
 Û, *overplus.*  
     û, *to consort with.*  
     û, *to overshadow.*  
     û, *to be connected with.*  
 Ün, *favor.*  
     ün, *screened.*  
 Ụt, *the hiccup sound.*